

**AJMR**

**ISSN (Online) : 2278 - 4853**

# **Asian Journal of Multidimensional Research**



***Published by :  
www.tarj.in***

**AJMR**

ISSN (online) : 2278-4853

Editor-in-Chief : Dr. Esha Jain

Impact Factor : SJIF 2022= 8.179

Frequency : Monthly

Country : India

Language : English

Start Year : 2012

Published by : [www.tarj.in](http://www.tarj.in)

Indexed/ Listed at : Ulrich's Periodicals  
Directory, ProQuest, U.S.A.

E-mail id: [tarjjournals@gmail.com](mailto:tarjjournals@gmail.com)

### **VISION**

The vision of the journals is to provide an academic platform to scholars all over the world to publish their novel, original, empirical and high quality research work. It propose to encourage research relating to latest trends and practices in international business, finance, banking, service marketing, human resource management, corporate governance, social responsibility and emerging paradigms in allied areas of management. It intends to reach the researcher's with plethora of knowledge to generate a pool of research content and propose problem solving models to address the current and emerging issues at the national and international level. Further, it aims to share and disseminate the empirical research findings with academia, industry, policy makers, and consultants with an approach to incorporate the research recommendations for the benefit of one and all.

<b>SR. NO .</b>	<b>PARTICULAR</b>	<b>PAGE NO.</b>	<b>DOI NUMBER</b>
<b>1.</b>	<b>AN ANALYSIS OF INSURANCE PENETRATION AND INSURANCE DENSITY IN INDIA</b>  Dr. Mamta	<b>1-7</b>	<b>10.5958/2278-4853.2022.00140.9</b>
<b>2.</b>	<b>SOFTWARE BASED AUTOMATION TOOLS FOR LIBRARY MANAGEMENT</b>  Pooja Devi	<b>8-16</b>	<b>10.5958/2278-4853.2022.00139.2</b>
<b>3.</b>	<b>FEATURES OF THE WRITTEN COLLECTIONS OF HADITH IN THE VII-VIII CENTURIES</b>  Aziz Sh. Tajiev	<b>17-21</b>	<b>10.5958/2278-4853.2022.00141.0</b>
<b>4.</b>	<b>A STUDY OF THE TRADITIONS AND CEREMONIES OF THE JEWS OF BUKHARA</b>  Karimov Jamoliddin Abdulkhamidovich	<b>22-29</b>	<b>10.5958/2278-4853.2022.00142.2</b>
<b>5.</b>	<b>COOPERATION OF THE REPUBLIC OF CENTRAL ASIA IN THE SPHERE OF EDUCATION AND ENLIGHTENMENT</b>  Saidakbar Agzamkhodjaev	<b>30-34</b>	<b>10.5958/2278-4853.2022.00143.4</b>
<b>6.</b>	<b>ABU HAFS NASAFI'S CONTRIBUTION TO THE DEVELOPMENT OF ISLAMIC CIVILIZATION</b>  Abdulatif Alloqulov	<b>35-37</b>	<b>10.5958/2278-4853.2022.00144.6</b>
<b>7.</b>	<b>EDUCATION OF YOUTH IN CONDITIONS OF NATIONAL INDEPENDENCE USING THE WORKS OF OUR GREAT SCIENTISTS</b>  G. K. Zaripova, A. I. Hikmatov Lieutenant Colonel, O` K. Temirov Lieutenant Colonel	<b>38-44</b>	<b>10.5958/2278-4853.2022.00145.8</b>
<b>8.</b>	<b>THE PLACE AND ROLE OF ABU HAMID AL - GAZALI AND IBN AL -ARABI IN THE DEVELOPMENT OF ISLAMIC THOUGHT AND SUFISM</b>  Pulatov Sayyodbek Khasanovich	<b>45-49</b>	<b>10.5958/2278-4853.2022.00146.X</b>
<b>9.</b>	<b>HOUSEHOLD MEMBERS' MIGRATION AND RICE PRODUCTIVITY</b>  Govinda Bahadur K.C., Durga Devkota, Naba Raj Devkota, Dirgha Jibi Ghimire, Ujjal Tiwari	<b>50-63</b>	<b>10.5958/2278-4853.2022.00147.1</b>

10.	<b>MILITARY CULTURE IN THE ACTIVITIES OF ZAHIRIDDIN MUHAMMAD BABUR</b> Javohir Shuhratog'li Rizakulov, Fakhriyor Akromjonog'li Bakhtiyorov	64-65	10.5958/2278-4853.2022.00150.1
11.	<b>TYPES AND STAGES OF SPECIAL MOVEMENTS OF MODERN ARMIES TODAY</b> Mirzobek Boltayev	66-69	10.5958/2278-4853.2022.00149.5
12.	<b>4C'S OF GREEN MARKETING</b> Dr. Suvasis Saha	70-81	10.5958/2278-4853.2022.00148.3
13.	<b>THEORETICAL METHODOLOGICAL BASIS OF THE COMBINATION OF NATURE AND HUMAN RELATIONS</b> Abdumalikov Abdulatif	82-88	10.5958/2278-4853.2022.00159.8
14.	<b>INFLUENCE OF SOIL AND CLIMATIC CONDITIONS OF THE EXPERIMENT AREA IN FERGANA REGION ON THE WEIGHT OF PEA PODS</b> Madina Furgatovna Gaybullaeva	89-92	10.5958/2278-4853.2022.00160.4
15.	<b>THE EFFECT OF LABOR FORCE PARTICIPATION ON THE ECONOMY AND BUDGET</b> Dr Nayan Deep	93-103	10.5958/2278-4853.2022.00151.3
16.	<b>HISTORICAL AND POLITICAL PROBLEMS OF THE FERGHANA VALLEY</b> Rakhmonali Begalievich Bekmirzaev	104-106	10.5958/2278-4853.2022.00154.9
17.	<b>KHIVA MADRASAHs</b> Khusanov S	107-111	10.5958/2278-4853.2022.00155.0
18.	<b>PRIVATIZATION OF PUBLIC ENTERPRISES AND ITS IMPLICATIONS ON ECONOMIC POLICY AND DEVELOPMENT</b> Dr Nayan Deep	112-121	10.5958/2278-4853.2022.00152.5
19.	<b>THE IMPORTANCE OF PHYSICAL EDUCATION AND SPORTS IN THE DEVELOPMENT OF SOCIETY</b> Shavkat Abdurakhmonov	122-126	10.5958/2278-4853.2022.00156.2
20.	<b>FORMS OF ORGANIZATION OF EDUCATIONAL ACTIVITIES IN HISTORY IN HIGHER EDUCATIONAL INSTITUTIONS</b> Gulnoza Karimova	127-132	10.5958/2278-4853.2022.00157.4

21.	<b>POST DEMONETIZATION IMPACT ON ECONOMY OF INDIA</b> Dr Nayan Deep	<b>133-140</b>	<b>10.5958/2278-4853.2022.00153.7</b>
22.	<b>DEVELOPMENT AND PRACTICAL APPLICATION OF ACMEOLOGICAL TECHNOLOGIES OF STUDENT ASSESSMENT DIAGNOSE</b> Khaitov Hamza Ahmadovich, Sharopova Gulnigor Bahriddinovna	<b>141-145</b>	<b>10.5958/2278-4853.2022.00158.6</b>
23.	<b>DRAWINGS ON THE POETRY OF USMON NOSIR</b> Sabirdinov Akbar Gofurovich	<b>146-150</b>	<b>10.5958/2278-4853.2022.00161.6</b>
24.	<b>AWARENESS OF THE “POSH” ACT, 2013 AMONG STUDENTS: A STUDY OF HIGHER EDUCATIONAL INSTITUTIONS OF PUNJAB</b> Aayushi Sharma	<b>151-155</b>	<b>10.5958/2278-4853.2022.00162.8</b>
25.	<b>EVALUATION OF PHYTOCHEMICALS, ANTIBACTERIAL, ANTIOXIDANT ACTIVITY, TOTAL FLAVONOID, AND PHENOLIC CONTENT OF ZANTHOXYLUM ARMATUM FOUND IN PALPA DISTRICT OF NEPAL</b> Deepak Kumar Shrestha	<b>156-173</b>	<b>10.5958/2278-4853.2022.00163.X</b>



## AN ANALYSIS OF INSURANCE PENETRATION AND INSURANCE DENSITY IN INDIA

**Dr. Mamta\***

\*Associate Professor,  
Dr. Bhim Rao Ambedkar College,  
University Of Delhi, INDIA  
Email id: mamtayadav1966@gmail.com

**DOI: 10.5958/2278-4853.2022.00140.9**

---

### ABSTRACT

*The insurance industry offers both domestic and international investors several business prospects. India is ranked 11th largest life insurance and 14th non-life insurance market globally. This article is based on two well-known characteristics that analyse a country's insurance sector's growth and development. Insurance Penetration and Insurance Density are the two metrics in question. Insurance Penetration is the ratio of insurance premium to gross domestic product (GDP) in percentage terms. Insurance density is measured as a ratio of insurance premium to population. This study is based on the secondary data collected from the annual reports of the Insurance Regulatory and Development Authority of India (IRDAI). The study covers data from 2014-15 to 2020-21. The insurance penetration and density are separately collected for life, non-life and industry. The study has used Mean, median, variance and standard deviation, t-test analysis, correlation and ANOVA for understanding the difference and relationship in the life and non-life categories on the parameters of Insurance Penetration and Insurance Density.*

**KEYWORDS:** Insurance, Insurance Penetration, Insurance Density, Insurance Premium, Gdp.

---

### Section 1 - Introduction and Review of Literature

#### Section 1.1 - INTRODUCTION

Insurance is a risk transfer tool. It is an instrument of protection from financial losses and risks and it is the reimbursement for the loss incurred. Insurance is used for better risk management. It is a hedge against unexpected and contingent losses and risks.

The world economy is recovering strongly from the Covid-19 crisis. The swift deployment of vaccines and large scale fiscal stimulus including unprecedented direct transfers to households and businesses are fuelling a stronger economic bounce back in 2021 than we projected last year<sup>[1]</sup>. The insurance sector is also growing at a very fast pace. India is ranked 11th among the top 20 life insurance markets globally by premium volume in 2020. In the non-life insurance business, India is ranked 14th in the world, improved by one rank from last year<sup>[1]</sup>. (Swiss Re, Sigma, 3/2021).

The pandemic has cemented positive paradigm shifts for insurance. High-risk awareness and acceleration in digitalization are positive structural trends for insurance. Global health and

protection type insurance premiums increased by 1.9 per cent and 1.7 per cent respectively in 2020 despite social distancing affecting distribution<sup>[2]</sup>.

At the end of March 2021, there are 67 insurers operating in India out of which 24 are life insurers, 27 are general insurers, 5 are standalone health insurers and 11 are re-insurers including foreign reinsurers branches and Lloyd's India<sup>[2]</sup>(Annual Report, IRDAI,2021). Among the life insurers, Life Insurance Corporation (LIC) is the sole public sector company. There are six public sector insurers in the non-life insurance segment. In addition to these, there is a sole national re-insurer, namely the General Insurance Corporation of India (GIC Re). Other stakeholders in the Indian insurance market include agents (individual and corporate), brokers, surveyors, and third party administrators servicing health insurance claims<sup>[3]</sup>.

### **Section 1.2 - Insurance Penetration and Density in India**

Insurance penetration in India increased from 3.76 per cent in 2019-20 to 4.20 per cent in 2020-21, registering a growth of 11.70 per cent. During the first decade of insurance sector liberalization, the sector has reported an increase in insurance penetration from 2.71 per cent in 2001-02 to 5.20 per cent in 2009-10. Since then the level of penetration declined till 2014-15 due to a decline in life insurance penetration<sup>[2]</sup>. Insurance penetration in the country consistently surged until 2009, when it was at its highest at 5.20 per cent in the country. One major reason for the sudden drop in overall penetration was the 2010 market crash in the industry along with strict regulations put in place to curb the problematic Unit Linked Investment Plans (ULIPs). However, the insurance penetration started again increasing from 2015-16 and reached 4.20 per cent in 2020-21 while the penetration of the life insurance sector has gone up from 2.15 per cent in 2001-02 to 3.2 per cent in 2020-21, non-life insurance penetration has gone up from 0.56 per cent to 1.00 per cent during the same period<sup>[2]</sup>. Insurance density for life insurance increased from 44 USD in 2014 -15 to 59 USD in 2020-21 and for non-life from 11 USD in 2014 -15 to 19 USD in 2020-21. In the year 2001-02 density was USD 9.10 for life and USD 2.40 for non life respectively.

### **Section 1.3 - Review of Literature**

Susy Cheston (2018) in the study titled “Inclusive Insurance: Closing the Protection Gap for Emerging Customers” stated that emerging consumers present a promising market for insurance, and creative insurance companies have been developing promising models to reach this market for years. Since the 1990s, the microinsurance movement has demonstrated the benefits of insurance for low-income people, as well as exploring new business models to serve these customers profitably in frontier and emerging markets. Microinsurance pioneers, as well as social insurance programs, targeted customers in the informal economy who were underserved by mainstream commercial insurance. Microinsurance models matched their premiums and benefits to the needs of these groups. Today, inclusive insurance expands this market and product-development work to all those who have not been served by traditional insurance, including the lower middle class, while retaining a particular emphasis on vulnerable and low-income populations<sup>[6]</sup>.

Alamelu K (2011) in the paper titled “Evaluation of Financial Soundness of Life Insurance companies in India” stated that as financial intermediaries, life insurers tap savings of the public in the form of premium. In order to sustain public confidence, they have to maintain their

financial credibility intact. In other words, a strong financial background enables insurance companies to augment the business<sup>[4]</sup>.

Vimala B & Alamelu K (2018) in their study entitled “Insurance Penetration and Insurance Density in India - an Analysis” highlighted that insurance affects the economic development of a country positively. As an economy develops over the years, the insurance business starts making inroads into the various sectors of economic activity in the country<sup>[5]</sup>.

## **Section 2 - Hypothesis**

Hypothesis (H1), there will be a difference in Insurance Penetration and Density’s life and non-life in the recent years (2014-2021).

Hypothesis (H2), there will be a significant relationship between Insurance Penetration and Density’s life and nonlife in the recent years (2014-2021)

## **Section 3 - Methodology**

This study is based on the secondary data collected from the annual reports of the Insurance Regulatory and Development Authority of India (IRDAI)<sup>[2]</sup>. The study covers a period of 7 years from 2014-21. The study has used descriptive statistics, t-test analysis, correlation and ANOVA for understanding the difference and relationship in life and non-life categories on the parameters of Insurance Penetration and Insurance Density. Insurance penetration and density are two indicators used to evaluate the sector's potential and performance. Insurance penetration is measured as the ratio of premium to Gross Domestic Product (GDP) and insurance density is the ratio of premium to the total population.

## **Section 4 - Analysis and Findings**

**TABLE 1: INSURANCE PENETRATION AND DENSITY (2014-21).**

INSURANCE PENETRATION				INSURANCE DENSITY		
YEARS	LIFE	NON LIFE	TOTAL	LIFE	NON LIFE	TOTAL
2014-15	2.6	0.7	3.3	44	11	55
2015-16	2.72	0.72	3.44	43	11.5	54.5
2016-17	2.72	0.77	3.49	46.5	13.2	59.7
2017-18	2.76	0.93	3.69	55	18	73
2018-19	2.74	0.97	3.71	55	19	74
2019-20	2.82	0.94	3.76	58	19	77
2020-2021	3.2	1	4.2	59	19	78
MEAN	2.7943	0.8614	3.6557143	51.5	15.8142857	67.3142857
MEDIAN	2.74	0.93	3.69	55	18	73
VARIANCE	0.03636	0.01605.	0.0853.	46.08333.	13.97476.	109.8081.



<b>STD. DEVIATION</b>	0.19069.	0.12668.	0.29205.	6.78847.	3.73828.	10.47894.
<b>STD. ERROR MEAN</b>	0 .07207	.04788	-	1.41294	4.00574	-
<b>TEST OF SIGNIFICANCE (t)</b>	37.770	17.991	22.34	11.192	16.847	12.18
<b>PEARSON CORRELATION (r)</b>	0.218	0.096	0.6807	276.5	83.849	0.9802
<b>COEFFICIENT OF DETERMINATION (r<sup>2</sup>)</b>	-	-	0.4634	-	-	0.9608

According to hypothesis (H1), there is a difference in Insurance Penetration and Density's life and non-life in recent years (2014-2021). The analysis of the study accepts the hypothesis by proving that there is a difference among both life and non life values. Penetration (overall) has increased with t-value of (37.770) and (17.991) for each component whereas density is still stuck at (11.192) and (16.847) with the degree of freedom for both is 6. With the inclination and declination for the penetration and density would be because of, as considering the annual report the insurance penetration in India increased from 3.76 percent in the year of 2019-20 to 4.20 percent in 2020-21 registering the growth of 11.70 percent, whereas insurance density started increasing from 2014-15 and gradually kept on increasing during 2019-21 at the level of USD (78). Penetration's t value is (22.34) yet for density it is (12.18), even with such difference both the variables are still significant at the level  $p < .01$  and  $< .05$ , in one and two tailed directions for declaring the positive difference among insurance penetration and density.

Including the hypothesis (H2), there is a significant relationship between Insurance Penetration and Density's life and non-life in recent years (2014-2021). Indeed, the data and values mentioned above declare a positive correlation for both in penetration for life and non-life for (r) = 0.6807 and (r<sup>2</sup>) = 0.4634 indicating that there is a moderate positive association. However, insurance density (r) = 0.9802 and (r<sup>2</sup>) = 0.9608 indicate there is a strong positive relationship due to relatively less growth in 2019-21 compared to past years at the level of USD(78).

**TABLE 2: ANALYSIS OF VARIANCE IN INSURANCE PENETRATION**

Source	SUM OF SQUARES	DEGREE OF FREEDOM	MEAN SQUARE
<b>LIFE</b>	.218	6	.036
<b>NON LIFE</b>	.096	6	.016
<b>TOTAL</b>	0.314	12	0.52
<b>REGRESSION</b>	26.300	2	13.150
<b>RESIDUAL</b>	1.700	4	.425

<b>TOTAL</b>	28.000	6	13.575
--------------	--------	---	--------

According to our previous hypotheses for accepting them and choosing to consider the analysis of variance for insurance penetration in the years from 2014-21 by obtaining the

*f*-ratio value which is (30.941) and significant at (.004) with ( $r=0.969$ ) and ( $r^2=.939$ ) for overall life and non-life components indicating that how the insurance sector can grow as the government has taken initiatives such as Pradhan Mantri Jan Arogya Yojana ( PM-JAY ), the largest health assurance scheme in the world and is funded by the government. Other government initiatives such as Pradhan Mantri Fasal Bima Yojana (PMFBY), Pradhan Mantri Jeevan Jyoti Bima Yojna (PMJJBY), Pradhan Mantri Suraksha Bima Yojana (PMSBY) are increasing insurance penetration<sup>[7]</sup>.

**TABLE 3: ANALYSIS OF VARIANCE IN INSURANCE DENSITY**

<i>Source</i>	<b>SUM OF SQUARES</b>	<b>DEGREE OF FREEDOM</b>	<b>MEAN SQUARE</b>
<b>LIFE</b>	276.500	6	46.083
<b>NON LIFE</b>	83.849	6	13.975
<b>TOTAL</b>	360.349	12	60.058
<b>REGRESSION</b>	25.239	2	12.619
<b>RESIDUAL</b>	2.761	4	.690
<b>TOTAL</b>	28.000	6	13.309

The analysis of variance for insurance density in years of 2014-21 with the values of the

*f*-ratio value which is (18.279). The significance is at (.010) with  $r= (.949)$  and  $r^2= (.901)$  for overall life and non-life components indicating that how the insurance density has remained constant in the 2019-21 due to the pandemic period as some people lost lives and some lost jobs due to sudden recession which could affect their daily survival too and with the increasing unemployability rate to being unable to afford insurance policies proving these 2-3 years were constant.

According to Table 2 of analysis of variance of insurance penetration and Table 3 of insurance density compared to each other in terms of regression the values being (26.300) and (25.239)

whereas residual at (1.700) and (2.761) respectively. The total is (28.000) with degree of freedom (6) as we are analyzing 7 years (2014-21) indicating if the population density would increase or decrease which would impact insurance penetration significantly due to the reasons stated above.

## **Section 5 - SUGGESTIONS AND CONCLUSION**

In India, the perception of the public toward life insurance must be changed. Insurance is used as savings and not as a protection instrument. Pure insurance policies or term insurance policies of private life insurers are showing growth with the help of massive advertisements. Moreover, most private life insurers are selling the term policies online. Therefore, the Life Insurance Corporation (LIC) of India, the only public sector undertaking, should also popularise online term policies. All these factors will increase insurance penetration and density in India.

Life insurers should extend their market areas to cover the rural and backward areas of the country. There is a lot of room for non-life insurance penetration to grow. Both the life and non-life insurance sectors have room for development when it comes to insurance density.

The increase in the Foreign Direct Investment (FDI) in insurance from 49 per cent to 74 per cent announced in the Union Budget (Feb '21) shall further help in driving increased penetration and coverage by enabling additional avenues for capital support required for the expansion of the insurance industry in India<sup>[7]</sup>.

Ayushman Bharat Pradhan Mantri Jan Arogya Yojana ( PM-JAY ) is the largest health assurance scheme in the world and is funded by the government. Other government initiatives such as Pradhan Mantri Fasal Bima Yojana (PMFBY), Pradhan Mantri Jeevan Jyoti Bima Yojna (PMJJBY), Pradhan Mantri Suraksha Bima Yojana (PMSBY) are increasing insurance penetration<sup>[7]</sup>.

The recent pandemic has emphasised the importance of healthcare in the economy, and health insurance would play a critical role in the effort to strengthen the healthcare ecosystem.

Younger working population proportion and rise in nuclear family structures are driving insurance coverage. An increase in the formalisation of household savings and awareness of financial products also contributed to insurance growth.

The study so far concludes that the net result is the penetration of life and non-life has increased in 2014-21 as considering the annual report the insurance penetration in India increased from 3.76% in the year 2019-20 to 4.20% in 2020-21 registering the growth of 11.70% whereas insurance density did increase in 2016-17 but after that remained same during from 2019-21 at the level of USD (77-78) which is why the density has been affected too due to people showing less interest in investing in insurance policies assuming it as a high-risk factor.

Although there is a significant relationship between penetration and density of life and non-life individually considering both of them have a co-dependency as if the population grows so will the insurance sector or vice-versa.

The growth of the insurance market is being supported by important government initiatives, strong democratic factors, conducive regulatory environment, increased partnership, product innovations, and vibrant distribution channels. There is still a large scope for the insurance industry to grow. Insurance awareness is to be created and people be persuaded to buy insurance,

since insurance is still a push product. Besides, people should be encouraged to buy adequate insurance and not under-insure them just for the sake of insurance.

## REFERENCES

1. *World insurance: The recovery gains pace - swiss re.* (n.d.). Retrieved June 10, 2022, from <https://www.swissre.com/dam/jcr:ca792993-80ce-49d7-9e4f-7e298e399815/swiss-re-institute-sigma-3-2021-en.pdf>
2. <https://www.irdai.gov.in/admincms/cms/uploadedfiles/annual%20reports/Annual%20Report%202020-21.pdf>
3. <https://www.ibef.org/industry/insurance-sector-india>
4. [https://www.researchgate.net/publication/228319906\\_Evaluation\\_of\\_Financial\\_Soundness\\_of\\_Life\\_Insurance\\_Companies\\_in\\_India](https://www.researchgate.net/publication/228319906_Evaluation_of_Financial_Soundness_of_Life_Insurance_Companies_in_India)
5. [https://www.researchgate.net/publication/331487684\\_Insurance\\_Penetration\\_and\\_Insurance\\_Density\\_in\\_India\\_-\\_An\\_Analysis](https://www.researchgate.net/publication/331487684_Insurance_Penetration_and_Insurance_Density_in_India_-_An_Analysis)
6. <https://content.centerforfinancialinclusion.org/wp-content/uploads/sites/2/2018/08/Inclusive-Insurance-Final-2018.06.13.pdf>
7. <https://www.investindia.gov.in/sector/bfsi-insurance>
8. <https://www.moneycontrol.com/news/business/indias-insurance-penetration-sees-marginal-improvement-in-fy21-shows-swiss-re-data-7172391.html>
9. <https://cafemutual.com/news/insurance/24009-even-after-20-years-of-opening-up-insurance-penetration-in-india-is-less-than-5>
10. [https://www.researchgate.net/publication/272182346\\_Penetration\\_Density\\_and\\_Elasticity\\_aspects\\_of\\_Insurance\\_sector\\_in\\_India](https://www.researchgate.net/publication/272182346_Penetration_Density_and_Elasticity_aspects_of_Insurance_sector_in_India)
11. [http://chakdahacollege.in.net/upld\\_journal/upld\\_jrnl\\_dcmnt/apr20/10-5\(1\)-1-8.pdf](http://chakdahacollege.in.net/upld_journal/upld_jrnl_dcmnt/apr20/10-5(1)-1-8.pdf)

## SOFTWARE BASED AUTOMATION TOOLS FOR LIBRARY MANAGEMENT

Pooja Devi\*

\*Research Scholar,  
INDIA

Email id: poojash208@gmail.com

DOI: **10.5958/2278-4853.2022.00139.2**

---

### ABSTRACT

*Automating the processes of acquisition, cataloguing, and circulation is a major benefit of library automation software. They are able to better service their customers because of it. It is also much simpler to discover books and keep track of the stockpile arrangement when a library management software solution is used in schools or colleges or institutions. The library's book collection will benefit from this, as librarians will be able to remove obsolete titles and replace them with newer editions, ensuring the long-term viability of the collection. In order to keep track of its assets and members, libraries depend on library management systems (LMS). A library's inventory, loans, and memberships are all managed via library management systems. These systems may occasionally be used to handle many physical locations' worth of materials. This sort of software may be utilised by libraries in both public and private educational institutions. Management systems in libraries are used by both library users and library personnel to keep track of materials acquired, catalogued, and kept in stock.*

**KEYWORDS:** *Software Tools for Libraries, Library Automation, Software Platforms For Libraries.*

---

### INTRODUCTION

Computers may be used to automate a library's cataloguing and circulation processes, as well as other common library functions. There are several ways in which libraries employ computers and other technology in the automation process. Automation in libraries is the transition from manual to automated methods, such as from a card catalogue to an OPAC or an integrated library system or from manual circulation cards to an OPAC.

Automation is the use of machines to make a task easier while also reducing the demand on human labour and resources. Librarians and library personnel will be able to contribute more effectively to the transmission of knowledge and information if they are freed up by library automation systems [1]. When it comes to library science, automation is "the technology associated with the design and development of process and system that minimizes human interaction."

Automated acquisitions, cataloguing and authority control, serials control, circulation and inventory, and interlibrary loan and document delivery are all essential services that have been automated since the 1960s with the creation of the machine-readable catalogue record (MARC). One or a few system providers presently control the library automation market (Auto-Graphics,



EOS International, Ex Libris, Follett, Innovative Interfaces, Polaris Library Systems, SirsiDynix, TLC, and VTLS).



**Figure 1 : Library Management Suite and Classes**

### Add-On Features in Tools

Add-ons, such as link resolvers, portal and metasearch interfaces, and e-resource management modules often provided by third-party vendors, are becoming increasingly important in library automation in recent years. Other trends include better integration with the Web environment (rewriting fat PC clients as browser applications, using XML and style sheets for display, and developing XML import and export capabilities), as well as a growing emphasis on digital content delivery.

Libraries are well-known for their use of information and communication technology (ICT) for everyday tasks as well as for offering search services to patrons. Libraries are increasingly relying on computers, both for internal operations and for accessing the library's collection of information. The usage of computers eliminates the need for tedious and time-consuming tasks for both library visitors and staff members. Computers aren't only for processing data anymore; they're also for storing, accessing, and retrieving it [1].

It was during the 1960s that the first computer-generated and printed indexes for scientific and technical literature were created. Computers began to be used for more than just indexing and printing; they were also used to create databases that could be accessed by computers. A number of indexing and abstracting journals, including Biological Abstracts, Chemical Abstracts, Index Medicus, etc., were not only produced by computer, but they were also made available as computer-readable databases on magnetic tapes, and several organisations began subscribing to them to organise their local information storage and retrieval services.

### Historical Perspectives

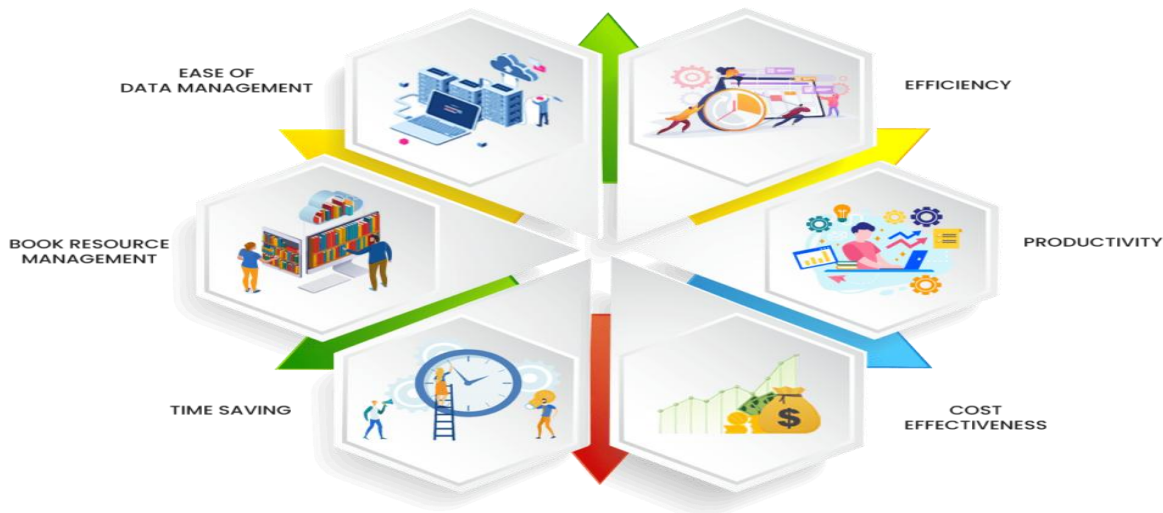
In the 1970s, libraries began using integrated library automation software. It was in the 1970's that libraries began using minicomputers to automate many of their daily processes such as cataloguing, acquisition, and serials. In the early 1980s, when personal computers (PCs) were inexpensive enough for libraries to purchase, the movement began to gather up steam. It's hard to

believe that in the last two decades, computer technology has advanced to such an unparalleled level. Because of this, libraries may now easily access low-cost computer resources. Different off-the-shelf general or specific-purpose software packages for library automation are currently available in a broad range and are increasingly being utilised to automate various tasks in libraries.

This session provides an overview of library automation, including its definition, history, and purpose. Automation of library operations, such as cataloguing, OPAC, circulation, acquisition, serial control, etc., is being planned. This session also covers barcode and RFID technology.

The Oxford English Dictionary (Simpson & Weiner, 1989) defines automation as "the use of electrical or mechanical technologies to substitute human labour in any sector of business or research." ALA's Glossary of Library and Information Science defines automation as "the execution of an activity, a sequence of operations, or a process by self initiating, self regulating, or automated methods. Data processing equipment such as a computer or other labor-saving gadgets are considered to be automated. Although D. S. Harder coined the term "automation" in 1936, the phrase library automation has been used in literature for the last five decades.

According to the Encyclopedia of Library and Information Sciences (Kent, 1977) "Library Automation is the use of automated and semiautomatic data processing equipment to accomplish such classic library functions as acquisitions, cataloguing, and circulation. "Library automation may be separated from similar topics such as information retrieval," "automated indexing/abstracting/textual analysis," and "automated textual analysis," all of which are historically linked with libraries [2].



**Figure 2 : Key Advantages with Tools**

The phrase "library automation" refers to the application of ICT trends and methods to replace the library's manual systems. There are several ways to think about "integrated library systems," but they all revolve on using a single database (for documents and users) to accomplish library activities.

## **The Evolution of Automated Library Systems**

When libraries started using punch cards in the 1930s, the beginning of library automation was underway. Because of the Great Depression and World War II, growth in computer systems was sluggish throughout the 1930s and early 1940s. The advancements in computer and telecommunications technologies helped to automate the library. The most significant advancements in library automation may be summarised as follows:

The years 1946 and 1947 saw the construction of two important computers. The University of Pennsylvania's John Mauchly and J. Presper Eckert worked on the ENIAC (Electronic Numerical Integrator and Calculator) computer. In all, it weighed 30 tonnes, had 18,000 vacuum tubes, and was located on two floors of a building. In another computer called EDVAC, two programmes may be stored simultaneously and switched between.

Bell Laboratories' development of the transistor, which replaced vacuum tubes, was a game-changer in 1947. At the same time, transistors reduced the computer's size and boosted its performance and capacity [3]. Using transistors for the first time, the UNIVAC I (Universal Automatic Computer) was used by the United States Bureau of the Census from 1951 until 1963. During this period, software development was also taking place. The machines were created with operating systems and programming languages in mind.

Robert Noyce of Intel and Jack Kirby of Texas Instruments' invention of the integrated circuit in the 1960s might be regarded another milestone. A single "chip" of silicon was used to house all of an electrical circuit's components. In 1961, H.P. Luhn developed a new indexing system called "keyword in context" (KWIC) for Chemical Abstracts manuscripts. Keyword indexing was not a novel concept, but it was discovered to be particularly well-suited to computers due to its low cost and the variety of access points it provided.

The Library of Congress (LoC) began using computers to create catalogue records that machines could read in the mid-1960s. LoC initiated the MARC I and MARC II projects between 1965 and 1968. Using three-digit identifiers to indicate fields, MARC was created as a means of "tagging" bibliographic information. In 1974, the National Information Standards Organization (NISO) adopted the MARC II format as the foundation for a standard. As a result of the standards, the computer could read and transmit a bibliographic record from one library system to another.

Email, telnet, and ftp all had their start on the ARPANET, which was built by the Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency in 1969.

Commercial systems for querying reference databases (such as DIALOG) were first used in the 1970s. • In the late 1970s, BALLOTS (Bibliographical Automation of Large Library Operations) was one of the earliest and subsequently served as the basis for RLIN (Bibliographical Automation of Large Library Operations) (the Research Libraries Information Network).

It was in the 1970s that the On-line Computer Library Center launched its first co-cataloguing project. This important effort made it easier for libraries to handle library items on a technological level. As part of ARPANET's subnet, MELVYL, the University of California's online public access catalogue, became widely accessible in 1980. All of the University of California campuses continue to utilise MELVYL as their centrally integrated library software. While computers became smaller in the 1980s, new technology enabled quicker CPUs, more RAM and more storage space. It was during the 1980s that the widespread use of

microcomputers in the developed world's homes, schools, libraries, and workplaces reached new heights [4]. Micro CDS / ISIS was first distributed by the UNESCO's distribution centre in the 1980s to countries all over the world. When Micro CDS / ISIS was made available for free to libraries in underdeveloped nations, it was a huge help. A number of integrated library packages began to emerge on the market. In India, the LibSys was first implemented around the end of the 1980s. Spreadsheets and databases, which helped librarians manage libraries and disseminate information, were accessible to them in the 1980s. CD-ROMs revolutionized library operations when they were introduced in the 1980s. There were CD-ROMs, which included databases as well as applications and information that was previously only available in paper. In the early 1990s, databases that had previously been accessible only online were available on CD-ROM in sections or in their whole, with connections to "outside" databases such as OCLC, DIALOG, and RLIN. Libraries would thus be able to collect data in a number of ways. A new age of library automation was born thanks to the Internet. E-mail, ftp, telnet, and the Internet, as well as access to commercial online services, have all seen an increase in their usage of networks. Since its inception in 1993, the World Wide Web has been the most rapidly expanding medium for the distribution of all types of information. Expert systems and knowledge systems were available in the 90s with development in software and hardware capabilities. Currently available information delivery systems are flourishing as a result of advances in silicon computer processors, more storage, quicker telecommunication lines, and higher-capacity data transmission [5].

### **Need and Purpose of Automated Library Services**

Because of the exponential development of information, a computerised information storage and retrieval system is now a need. Computers are the only tools that can handle massive amounts of data in an efficient and effective manner while still being very accurate and timely. Automating library processes using computers is advantageous for the following reasons:

In library work, many tasks need a precise updating of entries in files, which are tiresome and time-consuming. In a library, the same record may be used for various purposes. It is possible to do each procedure on a single copy of a title. An order-generated bibliographic record is first utilised for the purchase of a document, followed by technical processing and then by library OPAC, circulation, binding, and so on.

Multiple people may access a bibliographic record independently thanks to automation. In a branch library, a staff member may check the progress of an order without having to make an inquiry or maintain several files. A user may see whether a book is checked out or on the library's shelf;

- The use of information technology in libraries improves the institution's operating efficiency. It makes human labour more efficient while also increasing efficiency, accuracy, and economy.
- Using computers is something that library personnel, especially the younger ones, enjoy doing. Many library workers find the use of computers to be a motivating aspect;
- The use of technology has a positive impact on library staff productivity. It frees up library employees to focus on user-centered services by taking care of the clerical work.
- It raises the bar for library services.

It is tough for librarians to run a library since they must maintain it well-organized and supplied. Frequently, they must deal with a large number of requests from patrons for information and resources. Disorganized shelves, unfulfilled book orders, out-of-date citations, and other issues are all too common in libraries that lack proper management [6].

It is here that library automation software comes in handy the most for researchers. Organizing and maintaining a catalogue is a tedious job that may be done automatically. Increasingly, libraries throughout the globe are turning to Library Automation to manage their collections. Several frequent issues faced by libraries, such as overburdened staff, inefficient processes, and worsening customer service, have been addressed via the use of automation solutions. With a user-friendly LMS like iSLIM, library users need just a few minutes of training to be up and running.

LIS Encyclopedia describes Library Automation as "The use of automated and semiautomatic data processing equipment to conduct such conventional library functions as acquisitions, cataloguing, and circulation."The hardware and software used to automate libraries is called library automation. Automated methods for maintaining a library's holdings and use data are most often connected with a library management system (LMS) [7].

All of a library's day-to-day operations and services may be automated via library automation. Commonly, libraries may automate:

- Lending, renewal, return, on hold, etc. are all examples of circulation.
- Cataloging: Keeping track of, managing, and retrieving resources, etc.
- Ordering, receiving, returns, and cancellations are all aspects of the acquisition process.
- Ordering, cancelling, claiming, returning undesired or damaged items, accounting, etc. are all examples of serial control.
- Library Automation may also be used to automate iOPAC, digital libraries, intranet access, and more.

Library automation enhances the overall efficiency of the system. It's more dependable than doing things by hand, and it's becoming better all the time thanks to new technological advancements. In today's fast-paced environment, the following are the primary goals of library automation.

- To improve operational efficiency.
- Aiming to improve the quality of service
- To make it easier for those who use computers from afar to get information.
- Useful for libraries and patrons when manual approaches are insufficient.
- Other network or system resources, such as the internet, may be accessed quickly and easily.
- Their physical and digital resources are being better managed.

For example, library automation software provides barcode scanning or RFID tags that may be used to identify books and other electronic resources. Reduces the burden of the library's personnel and boosts the library's overall efficiency. Computers and software are being used to



take the place of old-fashioned paper-based processes. Information may be accessed in a more convenient and efficient way. As a result of automation, libraries may save space by not needing to retain as many physical books as they did before. Using it, libraries may save money and time by automating tedious administrative processes. There is less need for employees in libraries that utilise automation, since most jobs are mechanised. Libraries may reduce the number of errors in their databases by automating them. When data and resources are automated, there is no risk of their being reused [8].

Libraries of all kinds may utilise the web-based Library management system, which is available for both academic and public institutions. iSLIM was built by Algorhythms using the most up-to-date technology in order to give its consumers with the best possible service. Cataloging, circulation, acquisitions, and serials may all be automated using this software.

Many libraries use automated email reminders/letters to vendors for books that haven't been received, such as this one from a library. It also automates reminders for late payments, problems that have not been received, and more. Indeed, library automation has revolutionized the way libraries perform their most important functions. We're all ears if you have ideas on how to make your library more efficient via the use of automation. Get in contact with Algorhythms as soon as possible to discuss your needs.

Manage books and members in libraries by using a system called a library management system (LMS). Systems requirements, users, operation content, and activity content all go into creating a software solution [9].

The ability of a library user to do a book search by title, author, or topic is a critical component of any library management system. By using the unique identification code and the rack number for each book, they should be able to find a specific book. The system should offer information on the books that each member owns. For example, the system should include a restriction on the quantity of books that may be taken and the length of time a book can be maintained. Members should be fined if they haven't paid their dues. Libraries have many various elements, and this third phase in the creation of library management system software is based on these diverse aspects. All of the library's information, including its name, the books it has available, its members, their details, and their membership cards are included in a single class pattern [10].

A library's operations are broken down even further at this point into their component parts. Drawing an activity diagram around the three main actions of borrowing, returning, and renewing a book is the starting point. Coding for each activity in the case, class and activity diagrams is the last step. This is the most crucial part of the library management system software's functionality. gitHub, a library management system built in Python, keeps track of data in a log. This platform is used to create the software systems.

## **CONCLUSION**

User-friendly and cost-effective library management system software is needed. It has to be in sync with the organization's requirements and compatible with the current technology. A software solution that aids in the efficient management of library data should be used by every library. Information about anything from the library's holdings to its members may be found in this database. Every book and reference accessible for reading and lending is catalogued by the programme. The programme handles membership information, loan data, and renewal dates. The scanning of the barcode while lending or returning books is made easier by a library

management system software with bar-coding and RFID capabilities. When the system manages the catalogue and inventory, the process is made responsible. This software function aids in the administration of book inventories and circulations. The system can keep track of books that are in the library's possession, whether they are checked out, on the shelves, being circulated, missing, or waiting to be ordered. The programme makes it easy to acquire additional assets. Using the library's back-end database, the programme generates reports on all of its users, fees collected, unpaid bills, and overdue penalties. Renewal and return dates are sent to members through email. Membership cards and user IDs are generated by the programme. Handy Library Manager, Librarian, Insignia Library System, and Lucidea Integrated Library Systems are all well-known library management system websites that can be found all over the globe. Marvel Soft is India's top library management system. Libraries in India employ GLibrary, My Library, and Ampletrails Library, among others, to manage their collections online. In today's technologically advanced world, it's vital that we reject time-consuming and arduous ways in favour of something that is so simple and compact to use on a computer. This system effectively serves a wide range of customers.

## REFERENCES

- [1] Michael Levine-Clark, ALA Glossary of Library and Information Science, Fourth Edition. (Chicago: American Library Association, 2013).
- [2] Joan M. Reitz, "Online Dictionary for Library and Information Science," [https://products.abc-clio.com/ODLIS/odlis\\_1.aspx](https://products.abc-clio.com/ODLIS/odlis_1.aspx)
- [3] Jagdish Arora and Vaishali Shah, "Library Automation: Library Automation: Definition, Need, Purpose and Advantages," <https://epgp.inflibnet.ac.in/Home/ViewSubject?catid=21>
- [4] Gupta, S. (2018). Evaluation of next generation online public access catalogue (OPAC) features in library management system. *Library Waves*, 4(1), 43-50.
- [5] Burton, B. A., Aragon, R. W., Bailey, S. A., Koehler, K. D., & Mayes, L. A. (1987). The reusable software library. *IEEE software*, 4(4), 25.
- [6] Choo, C. W. (2000). Working with knowledge: how information professionals help organisations manage what they know. *Library management*, 21(8), 395-403.
- [7] Rowley, J. (2003). Knowledge management—the new librarianship? From custodians of history to gatekeepers to the future. *Library management*.
- [8] Collobert, R., Bengio, S., & Mariéthoz, J. (2002). Torch: a modular machine learning software library. *Idiap*.
- [9] Witten, I. H., Bainbridge, D., & Nichols, D. M. (2009). How to build a digital library. Morgan Kaufmann.
- [10] Hogben, H. J., Krzystyniak, M., Charnock, G. T., Hore, P. J., & Kuprov, I. (2011). Spinach—a software library for simulation of spin dynamics in large spin systems. *Journal of Magnetic Resonance*, 208(2), 179-194.

## FEATURES OF THE WRITTEN COLLECTIONS OF HADITH IN THE VII-VIII CENTURIES

**Aziz Sh. Tajiev\***

\*Scientific Secretary of the Imam Maturidi,  
International Scientific Research Center,  
11, A. Kadiri, Tashkent, UZBEKISTAN  
Email id: aziztoho\_83@mail.ru

**DOI: 10.5958/2278-4853.2022.00141.0**

---

### ABSTRACT

*The article analyzes the history of the written collection of hadiths in the VII-VIII centuries, in particular, the methods and approaches used by the hadith scholars in the selection and adoption of hadiths. From the historical point of view, this process is divided into the periods of the companions, the successors (tabiun) and the people who lived after them, and the peculiarities of each of them, the methods used in practice were studied on the basis of sources. At the same time, the factors that led to the emergence and acceleration of the process of compiling hadiths are described. From the first stage of the history of the collection of hadiths to the ninth century, which is recognized as the "golden age" of the science of hadith, the process of "kitabah", "tadwin", "ta'lif" and "tasnif" is the process that lasted until the creation of the main collections of hadith.*

**KEYWORDS:** *Qur`An, Hadith, Prophet, Companion, Successor Of A Companion, Muhaddith, Mutawatir, Ohod, Hadith Collections, Kitabat, Tadwin, Ta`Lif, Tasnif, Sahifa, Juz, "Al-Sahifa Al-Sodiqa".*

---

### INTRODUCTION

#### Main Part

The basic text of the Islamic faith is the Holy Qur'an, and it is completely forbidden to alter its phrasing or meaning. Because of this, the Prophet, peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, commanded the companions to record the verses first, with the hadiths to follow. It should be mentioned that there are numerous stories that the Prophet (peace and blessings of Allah be upon him) denied some of the companions' requests to write hadith. Abu Said Khudri (612-693) provides the following details on this subject, for instance:

"We asked the Prophet (peace and blessings of Allah be upon him) for permission to write a hadith. However, he did not allow" (Khamidulla M., 2007:54).

There weren't many Companions who could read and write in the early days of Islam. The people in attendance were busily taking notes on the Qur'anic passages. Their interest in literacy grew with time. Sa'id ibn As (623-679), Sa'd ibn Rabi' Khazraji (d. 625), Bashir ibn Sa'd ibn Salaba (d. 644), and Aban ibn Sa'id ibn As (d. 634), as a result, studied and learned to write and then started instructing others. Consequently, there were 40 revelation secretaries (Ch. Gavriy, 2009, p. 63). Their population growth hastened the hadith compilation process.

The Prophet, peace and blessings of Allah be upon him, initially prohibited the recording of hadith since the emphasis was on enhancing the companions' memory to secure their absorption, according to the aforementioned interpretations. The verses of the Qur'an should be memorized, and they should not be mixed up with hadiths. This is illustrated in the following hadith, which Abu Saeed Khudri narrated:

مَا كُنَّا نَكْتُبُ غَيْرَ التَّشَاهُودِ وَالْقُرْآنِ

"We did not write anything except Tashahhud and the Koran" (Abu Dawud, 2008:211).

The sources further detail how the Prophet (peace and blessings of Allah be upon him) forbade his companions from recording hadith because he did not want verses and other material to be put on a single page (S. Gavri, 2009: 66). The lack of writing supplies at the time could be one explanation for this. In his book "Ma'olim as-sunna an-nabawiya," scholar Abdurrahman Itr, who studied the science of hadith, claimed that the absence of writing tools and the hadiths' similarity to or confusion with verses were the main reasons why they were not recorded (Abdurrahman Yitr, 1986:72-73).

The Prophet (peace and blessings of Allaah be upon him) prevented the companions from writing down the hadith at the beginning of the revelation of the verses of the Qur'an, but subsequently, when they developed the capacity to study the verses, he permitted them to do so. Numerous hadiths have information on this. For instance, according to a hadith attributed to Abu Hurayra:

"Among the companions of the Messenger of Allah, peace and blessings be upon him, there was no one who knew the hadith better than me. Abdullah ibn Amr ibn As was an exception, he wrote hadiths, but I did not write them" (ibn Abdulbar, 1994: 299).

## **Result**

In general, information about the prohibition of recording hadith in some narrations and that they were prescribed to be written in others caused different opinions among researchers. There have been separate studies devoted to this (A. Baghdadi, 2008). Over time, the number of hadiths increased in connection with various religious and social events. Naturally, it became difficult to remember them all, as a result, cases of forgetfulness began to be observed. This, in turn, led to permission to write hadith. For example, according to the sources, one of the companions came to the Prophet (peace and blessings of Allah be upon him) complaining about his poor memory and inability to remember all the words of the hadith. The Prophet, peace and blessings be upon him, advises him "to ask for help from his right hand" (I. Madani, 2010:19). This information indicates that the recording of hadith has become permitted. Scholars such as Abu Muhammad ibn Kuteyba Dinowari (828-889), Abu Suleiman Khattabi (931-998) argued that the hadiths that were allowed to be recorded copied messages that came in the sense of an excuse to write.

There is information in the sources that the Prophet (peace and blessings of Allah be upon him) allowed some Companions, such as Abdullah ibn Amr ibn As (d. 683), to write hadith (Abu Zahw, 1984:54). Among them, Abdullah bin Amr was known as a person who collected hadith in written form. In general, there is evidence of the existence of small unsystematized collections of hadith in the early Islamic period. In particular, the collection of hadiths compiled by Abdullah ibn Amr was called "al-Sahifa as-sadiq" (M. Howli, 1986: 30). This collection contains authentic hadiths that were later transmitted by Abdullah ibn Amr's grandson Amr ibn Shuaib (d. 895). From this we can conclude that at that time there were special collections of

hadiths, by their common name they were called "Sahif" or "Sukhuf". Unfortunately, almost no specimens of this collection have come down to us. One such hadith collection was identified and researched by the Indian scholar Muhammad Hamidullah (1908-2002) and a modern edition has been made (M. Hamidullah, 2007). As a result, it became possible to study the specifics of the collections of hadiths created in the early Islamic period, including the structural structure. It should be noted that during this period, hadiths were collected for the personal use of people, without systematization.

It should be noted that the letters of the Prophet (peace and blessings of Allah be upon him) to neighboring areas are evidence that the hadiths were written during that period. According to sources, such letters were sent to Yemen, Bahrain, Yamama, Hazramaut and Oman (Abu Zahw, 1984:87). They served to spread the teachings of Islam in other regions.

After the death of the Prophet (peace and blessings of Allah be upon him), there were disagreements among Muslims regarding the appointment of a caliph, such as the apostasy of certain tribes or the refusal to pay zakat. As a result of attempts to find solutions to these issues, interest in hadith has increased. Already during the life of the Prophet (peace and blessings of Allah be upon him), the companions received an answer to any question they were interested in directly from him, now they had to turn to the Qur'an and hadiths for this. Among them, there were few who knew all the hadith completely by heart. For this reason, it became necessary to compose the hadith in writing.

In addition, after the Prophet (peace and blessings of Allah be upon him), some people began to change the original content of the hadiths and spread fabricated hadiths for malicious purposes. To prevent this negative situation, the Companions tried to transmit as few hadiths as possible. For example, according to the Muslim scholar Dinovari, during the caliphate of Umar ibn al-Khattab (634-644), the companions were required to be careful in transmitting hadith and to deny reports without witnesses (M. Khatib, 1981: 92). Thus, when transmitting a hadith, a tradition arose to ask about its narrators. Until then they had not been asked about sanada. Since the Companions knew each other well, there were almost no changes or interweaving of hadith among them. Muhammad ibn Siyrin (653-729) said:

"Initially there was no doubt about the authenticity of the hadith. However, after conspiracies arose, people began to say to each other: "Tell us your storytellers." Thus, the hadiths transmitted by the people of the Sunnah and the community were withdrawn, and the hadiths transmitted by the people of the fitnah began to be rejected "(Siboi, 2000: 108-109) also confirms the above information. As a result of this, scientific rules and methods for checking, sorting and accepting hadiths were formed. In particular, its date began to play an important role in determining the level of reliability of the narrative. Attention to Sanad especially increased by the 8th century.

It can be seen that the scientific research of Sanad was carried out even by Western researchers. The German scholar Josef Schacht (1902-1969) pointed out that this system existed in the early Islamic period and reached its peak in the collections of hadiths created in the middle of the 8th-9th centuries. (Schacht, 1979: 163).

With regard to the work done on the compilation of hadith, it can be said that Umar ibn al-Khattab was the first to put forward this idea. According to the information provided by Urwa ibn Zubayr (643-713), he consulted his companions on this matter. The Companions reacted



positively to the offer of a written collection of hadith. However, later Umar bin Khattab returned from this opinion and told the companions: "I wanted to write the Sunnah." However, I remembered that those who died before you wrote books and left the Book of Allah because they were obsessed with these books. I will not exchange the Book of God for anything else" (Baihaqi, 1984:80-81).

In general, the Companions, in particular, Zubair ibn Awwam, Abu Ubayd Amir ibn Abdullah (584-639), Abbas ibn Abdulmutallib (568-653) and others, refrained from transmitting many hadiths in order to avoid mistakes in the narration of hadiths and prevent the addition of things which are not original. Because, according to the teachings of Islam, making a mistake in religion is considered a grave sin, and the companions deeply felt this responsibility.

## **CONCLUSION**

Finding answers to various questions that arise in the muslim society as a result of ethnic diversity, mixing of different religions and cultures, the rapid geographical expansion of the distribution areas of Islam, the fight against the destructive activities of various wandering religious movements that began to appear after the death of the Prophet, may Allah bless him and welcome , some in society. The need to preserve the unity of faith by eliminating ideological and intellectual divisions caused a sharp increase in interest in the study of hadith. After all, the process of using hadiths for different purposes by different movements, in many cases even by individuals, interweaving non-existent hadiths, giving existing foreign interpretations and interpretations that do not correspond to the teachings of Islam, led some Muslims astray. As a consequence, scholars face an important and urgent task to scientifically and critically study the hadiths, sort them, separate the authentic from the unauthentic and accept them. The scientific principles and rules they developed for the selection and acceptance of hadith served to prevent the wide dissemination of the false ideological views of fanatics in the form of misinterpretations and interpretations given to woven hadith or narratives.

Therefore, in the early Islamic period, among the companions of Abu Bakr Siddique, Umar ibn Khattab, Usman ibn Affan, Ali ibn Abu Talib and others, realizing this need, tried to prevent mixing of various textual narratives with hadiths, to collect and preserve authentic stories, transmitting them in written form. or verbally, they emphasized staying. At the time of the Companions, the process of recording hadith was carried out by writing them on existing writing instruments. Later, in order to facilitate the activities of rulers and judges in making judgments on various issues, during the time of the Companions, the task of collecting hadiths recorded on various materials was carried out in devans. In the history of the science of hadith, it appeared as the Tadwin stage of the written collection of hadith.

With the further development of the methodology and methods of the written collection of hadiths by the Muhaddith scholars, the process of creating separate books containing hadiths - taalif, and then processing these created books into chapters in a certain order and system - classification took place. Thus, in the second half of the II / VIII century - the beginning of the III / IX century, almost all approaches and methods used in the collections of hadith that have come down to us today were formed and improved. All the collections created in the following period were basically classified around these styles.

## **REFERENCES**

1. Abdurahmon Itr. Ma'olimu-s-sunnati-n-nabaviya. – Iordaniya: Maktabatu-l-manor, 1986.

2. Abison Mutayriy. Tarix tadvini-s-sunna va shubuhatu-l-mustashriqin. – Quvayt: Jomi'atu-l-Quvayt, 2002.
3. Abu Bakr Ahmad ibn Ali ibn Sobit Xatib Bag'dodiy. Taqyidu-l-ilm. – Qohira: Doru-l-istiqoma, 2008.
4. Abu Bakr Bayhaqiy. al-Madخال ila-s-sunani-l-kubro. – Quvayt: Doru-l-xulafa li-l-kitobi-l-islomiy, 1984.
5. Abu Dovud Sulaymon ibn Ash'as. Sunan. – ar-Riyoz: Maktaba dori-s-salom, 2008. – J. 4

## A STUDY OF THE TRADITIONS AND CEREMONIES OF THE JEWS OF BUKHARA

**Karimov Jamoliddin Abdulkhamidovich\***

\*Senior Teacher,  
Department of Islamic Studies and Islamic Civilization,  
ICESCO Department  
Tashkent, UZBEKISTAN  
Email id: j.karimov@gmail.com

**DOI: 10.5958/2278-4853.2022.00142.2**

---

### ABSTRACT

*The article describes the various types of pilaf that existed in the ritual cuisine of Bukhara Jews, their semiotic features and specifics of their using in the family and religious ritual practice. The author's materials show that Bukhara Jews were the keepers of the archaic kind of pilaf and considered this dish as a symbol of their identity. It shows the distinguish between Islam and Judaism!*

*This present article examines the historical aspects of the originality, mutual influence and interpenetration of the art of Bukharian Jews in the dyeing and weaving craft of Central Asia and in particular in Bukhara. When it comes to prayers, the first thing to note is the weekly prayer in the synagogue, the Sabbath, which begins at sunset on Friday and ends on Saturday. It is forbidden to light fires, work, or even use vehicles on Saturdays [9]. According to Jewish teaching, God created the universe in six days and rested on the seventh day. That is why the Jews dedicate the seventh day of the Sabbath to rest and prayer [16:38]. Based on the analysis of numerous sources, the contribution of Bukharian Jews to the crafts of Bukhara is analyzed. The art of Bukharian Jews has a long history and deep artistic traditions. This is especially characteristic of the dyeing and weaving handicrafts of Bukhara! It presented how they can be ready for marriage! What is their requirements are?! You can easily find the information out which you really need to know!*

**KEYWORDS:** Crafts, Traditions, Religion, Ornaments, Avodah, Minyan, Sabbath, Torah, Sheloshim.

---

### INTRODUCTION

In Judaism, one of the essential requirements of the faith is to believe that the Creator will always communicate with His servants. The primary source of such communication is the Torah. Therefore, when Jews read and study the Torah, they enjoy divine revelation. The study of the Torah is inextricably linked with tefillah (prayer). Researchers claim that the word is derived from the Hebrew word which means “to judge.” In addition, Avodah (service) was used to denote prayers performed in public during the Temple period [19: 204].

It is known that in the system of the main pillars of any religion, prayers, ceremonies and holidays have a special and unique place. In Judaism, prayer (“AvodahShebalev” – “Service of

the Heart”) is divided into two forms: daily prayer in the morning (shacharit), noon (mincha), and evening (maariv), and weekly prayer in the synagogue on Saturday [21: 204-205]. It should be noted that the celebration of religious ceremonies among the Jews of Bukhara depended mainly on the city, whether there was a Jewish neighborhood in the city or the interests of the residents of the neighborhood. However, they often tried to perform their religious prayers, and although their numbers were small, most Jewish communities performed prayers in the form of a minyan (congregation) in the synagogues every morning. In addition, they tried to live in the Turkestan region, where they lived for a long time, by applying various religious duties and ceremonies to their lives from birth to death. In particular, they preserved traditions such as circumcision, marriage, weddings, and funerals during the early years of independence. These ceremonies contributed greatly to their unification and the protection of the Jewish identity [5]. These ceremonies, which begin with the birth of a child, include funeral and posthumous mourning ceremonies.

The festivals held throughout the year, as well as ceremonies held in connection with one another, also played an important role in the life of the Jews, through which the Jews maintained their nationality.

When it comes to prayers, the first thing to note is the weekly prayer in the synagogue, the Sabbath, which begins at sunset on Friday and ends on Saturday. It is forbidden to light fires, work, or even use vehicles on Saturdays [9]. According to Jewish teaching, God created the universe in six days and rested on the seventh day. That is why the Jews dedicate the seventh day of the Sabbath to rest and prayer [16:38]. Obeying the commandments of the Holy Sabbath includes two important aspects:

1. Physical rest of the body after working for six days;
2. Dedicate one day a week, i.e. Saturday, to the Creator. For, as the Jewish sages have said, “Those who follow the Sabbath are like those who obey all the commandments of the Torah. Those who do not follow it are like those who do not follow any of the commandments of the Torah” [9].

Jews pray not only in the synagogue but also at home. Above the front door of the house are boxes with sentences from the Torah, called a mezuzah [15], wrapped in a long tube. At the entrance and exit of the house, the Jews touch the “mezuzah” and kiss their fingers. According to Jewish teaching, the mezuzah protects them from the evil of evil spirits.

During prayers in the house, a hat is thrown on the head and a scarf is thrown on top. The 16 most important of the invocations are recited while standing. While reading others, actions such as kneeling and shaking the body are performed [21: 203-206].

Rituals have a special place in Jewish life. They begin with the birth of a Jew and are performed throughout his or her life. Such ceremonies include circumcision, puberty, marriage, burial, and other ceremonies.

It is no secret that the birth of a child is a cause of joy. The circumcision ceremony is called “Brit Milah” which means “covenant of circumcision” in Hebrew. The Jewish family usually calls a person called a Mohel for this work and holds the ceremony. In the absence of an emergency, this ceremony is performed on the eighth day after the birth of the child. Guests from the circle of family members and friends attend the circumcision ceremony, which is considered a joyous event and then a Minyan (quorum) is organized. Since it is an honor to attend the ceremony,

close relatives are obliged to bring the child and hold him during the ceremony. A banquet will be held after the ceremony [14: 97-98]. The baby is often given a name at the Brit Milah ceremony. Continuing the Sephardic tradition, Jews often give the child the names of aged people who are still alive. Studies have shown that Bukhara Jews have a tradition of giving two names. Although there is no practice of circumcision for girls in Judaism, the divine covenant applies to them as well. According to tradition, the birth of a girl is announced in the synagogue. During the ceremony, the best wishes and prayers will be said for the newborns [8: 167-169].

The Jews of Bukhara regularly held the "British Mila" ceremony during the Soviet era, when there was a fierce struggle against religion. However, the persecution of Muslims also applied to members of the Jewish religion. Usually, in these ceremonies, the father went on a long journey or could not attend it for some reason.

Jews are required to study the Torah from childhood and to live following its rules. During the transition from childhood and adolescence, they must now take responsibility for their actions as members of society. In Judaism, a person who has reached the age of thirteen becomes a "Bar mitzvah" or "son of the commandment." It is now accepted that a person is an adult and must perform religious duties. After this stage, he will be able to participate in public meetings and form a "Minyan". Shortly after age thirteen, the boys were invited to read the Torah on Saturday and officially became bar mitzvahs. They demonstrate their skills by performing the necessary prayers in front of the synagogue and reading passages from the Bible. After this practice, which is usually limited to a ceremony held at the temple, a banquet is held in many places [1: 94-95]. In classical Judaism, for girls, this age is considered to be twelve years. Today, "bar mitzvah" for boys is held in many synagogues, but this custom is mainly performed at home with various ceremonies and rituals [17: 14].

Bukhara Jews who immigrated to Israel, the United States, and several other countries after the collapse of the Soviet Union see each other, especially because of the "bar mitzvah" ceremony, despite being spread and not closely related, and living far away [17: 74].

In Judaism, marriage is seen as a social institution introduced by the Creator at the time the world was created. The main purpose of marriage is mutual support between men and women [10: 2:18], sexual intimacy [10: 2: 24], and the continuation of the human race [10: 1: 28]. Marriage is a good deed, and it is even encouraged to marry by buying books of the Torah []. On the contrary, not marrying a family is considered a sin according to the Talmudic tradition.

In Judaism, a man is responsible for providing his wife with food, clothing, and sexual needs. Breaking family ties is voluntary, but not recommended. Traditionally, men give their wives "ketubah" when they get married. This is to prevent women from suffering economically in the event of a husband's death or divorce. The marriage ceremony consists of two parts. The first is called "erusin" (engagement) and the second is called "kiddushin" (prayer). Today, these two rituals, which are separated from each other, are often combined as a single ritual [8: 170-173].

Marriage and wedding ceremonies of Bukhara Jews take place in several stages. While some of these stages are common to other Jews, some practices are unique to Bukhara Jews. There are also various customs associated with marriage and weddings.

Studies show that during the Soviet era, there were some restrictions on the marriages and weddings of Bukhara Jews. In this sense, the wedding ceremony was held in the evening, in secret, the rabbi came to the house of the new couple, and the wedding ceremony was attended



only by very close family members to witness [3: 176]. However, in most cases, the Jews of Bukhara ignored the restrictions and tried to hold marriage and wedding ceremonies often following their traditional culture.

It should be noted that there are some changes in the conduct of wedding ceremonies among the Jews of Bukhara who moved abroad. A. Cooper, who immigrated to America, gives some information about what has changed and what has been preserved at the wedding ceremonies of the Jews of Bukhara. The American environment makes it difficult for Bukhara Jews to marry off mutual girls and prevent their traditions from continuing. For this reason, most Bukhara Jewish young men and women are trying to get rid of their traditional customs, preferring a life in America that is devoid of their traditions [3: 211-213].

In any case, if the Jews of Bukhara who immigrated to America establish a marriage bond between themselves, they are trying to preserve their traditions as they did in Turkestan. They continue the “eyebrow”<sup>1</sup> custom before the wedding. However, the bans to leave the house within 40 days are slightly different. In an urban setting, the newlyweds are allowed to visit the bride’s in-laws as well as their parents if they live in a separate apartment [3: 180].

During the Bukhara Khanate and the Tsarist period (from 1860 to 1920), marriages between Bukhara Jews and non-Jews were almost non-existent. Although no statistics are available, according to travelers in the 19th and early 20th centuries, the Emirate of Bukhara had strong social boundaries separating Jews from its Muslim neighbors [3: 244-245]. These strong social boundaries were partially broken during the Soviet era. Marriages between Bukhara Jews and their non-Jewish neighbors probably began during the Soviet era, when new doors to intergroup relations opened and strong social conservatism ended [4: 244-245]. However, marriages with non-Jews were not common, and foreign marriages were as rare among Bukhara Jews as in other Jewish communities in the former Soviet Union. Unlike Ashkenazi Jews, especially in Uzbekistan, Bukhara Jews had very low levels of intermarriage with non-Jews during the Soviet era [19: 93-94].

It should be noted that Central Asian Jews have many traditions related to marriage and weddings. Since the purpose of our study is not to describe them separately, it is not possible to list them all in this article. It is noteworthy that in these traditions there is a state of integration with the culture of other peoples who have lived next door for many years, which can be cited as a distinctive feature of the Jews of Bukhara from other Jewish communities. Data on this have been detailed in several studies [22: 62-105; 12].

In the Jewish holy book, the rites of death and remembrance are one of the basic elements of Judaism, the belief in salvation and the hereafter [20: 272-305; 6:84-90]. That is why Judaism sees death as a part of life. In the Jewish Bible, there are many reports of mourning over the death of a person or relative [10: 3:3; 10: 2: 16-17].

When a person dies in Judaism, the people around him help him say “Shema Israel”. It is a Hebrew expression that affirms the oneness of God and is similar to the “Testimony” in Islam. It should be noted that there are great similarities between the customs of the Jewish and local Muslim peoples, from washing the dead to burying them [18: 265-272]. This can be assessed by the interdependence of the origins of these two religions and the fact that these peoples have lived side by side for a long time.

The dead will not be left alone and will be followed until burial as a sign of respect. Before burying the dead, it should be bathed and wrapped in a simple, flat, and white shroud. This is called Tahara [6: 84]. The funeral should be buried as soon as possible, within 24 hours. It is important to accompany the dead when it is taken to the cemetery. Their close relatives symbolically tear a piece of their clothes and said, "Baruh Dayan a-Emet" (Blessed are You ... The True Ruler). Each of the participants throws some soil into the grave. Then the Kadish prayer is said to glorify God. This is followed by condolences and the mourners and relatives wash their hands as they leave the cemetery. The crowd then goes to the mourning house. It will be the home of the deceased or one of his close relatives, chosen for seven days of mourning [4: 252-253].

Mourning, which takes the form of a process, consists of several stages. The first stage, called Aninut, is the time between receiving the news of a loved one's death and burying it. The person who mourns in this short time is engaged in no activity other than the funeral. The second stage is a seven-day period called Shiva. At this time of deep mourning, a candle is lit in the house and all the windows are closed in memory of the dead. It is forbidden for mourners to have sex, to shave, to cut their hair, to work, and even to recite the Torah, except for verses of grief. In the process, the people visit, offer condolences, and bring food to the mourners. At the same time, visitors sit quietly while expressing grief or other feelings to the dead. Daily prayers are said in the house of mourning. The same can be said of the mourners who recite the Kadish for the dead. "Sheloshim" - the last stage of mourning ends thirty days after the funeral. The mourners still don't shave their beards and don't take part in entertainment events. Even during this period, friends and relatives visit the bereaved and try to comfort them. With the end of "Sheloshim" mourning will end for other people, except for children who mourn for their parents. This last phase of mourning will last a year [8: 175-179; 6: 84-86].

Commemoration ceremonies have been held among the Jews of Bukhara since ancient times. One of them is a memorial service in honor of the dead every evening for a week after his death. Although this practice is common among Jews around the world, it is performed once a week after seven days in Bukhara Jews. For example, a memorial service for a person who died on a Wednesday is held every Wednesday of that month. At the end of the first month, remembrance is done once a month for the first year. If he died on the 14th of a month, he will be remembered on the 14th of every month of that year [4: 253-254].

In addition, another memorial service will be held at the end of this year of mourning. During the first year, the number of memories dedicated to the memory of the dead will reach 21. Such ceremonies are held every year on the anniversary of the deceased for those who want to remember their relatives. Rituals usually take place at the home of the dead [2: 144-145].

The memorial service begins with "Minha and Ma'ariv (noon and evening prayers), in which passages from Zohar are recited and prayers are said in honor of the dead in the form of Hashkavah (be pleased) [4: 254-255].

Then food is served. The order of meals and service is carefully carried out. First of all, the pastries placed on the tables are eaten before the guests arrive. Then fresh greens and radishes are given. After these vegetables delicious fish fried with garlic and greens fried dough are served. Rice and meat pilaf, which are common in all Turkic peoples, are served as a main dish. Finally, the fruit meal ends [2: 268]. It is noteworthy that the memorial services of Bukhara Jews who immigrated to Israel are held in the same manner as in Uzbekistan, with some exceptions [3:

194-196]. Studies have shown that food is not necessarily served in this order but on a case-by-case basis.

Today, some elements related to mourning ceremonies can be seen among the Jews of Bukhara. For example, in the past, a mourner should not watch TV, worn new clothes, eats sweets, pistachios, pickles, and other similar products. However, to date, these things have been allowed.

There is another memorial and mourning ceremony among the Jews of Bukhara. This ceremony is called "sobgororon". Sobgororon is a ceremony held before the end of the first year of the dead's death. In this ceremony, which is attended only by women, food is eaten and prayers are said for the deceased. In addition, close female relatives of the dead clean the hair on their faces as a sign that they have stopped mourning. In this sense, the ceremony is reminiscent of the pre-wedding "kashchinan" ceremony of the Jews of Bukhara [3: 380].

Studies show that the elements in these ceremonies were integrated with the customs of other nations inhabited by Jews. For example, the city of Kattakurgan was inhabited by many Jews. Even among the Muslims living in this city and its environs, it can be seen that the above-mentioned customs have been carried out together in some places, and in some cases with minor differences. In particular, a year after the death of the deceased, the women of his close relatives will hold a mourning ceremony. This is very close to the "sobgororon" ceremony that exists among the Jews of Bukhara<sup>2</sup>.

From the above, it can be concluded that prayers are an integral part of Jewish life. Among them, the place of the Sabbath is special, and all Jewish communities around the world recognize it and try to live by the rules of that day.

As for rituals, they are performed at different times of a person's birth and life, due to different relationships. In this part, we have considered some of the rituals and customs associated with circumcision, adulthood, marriage, and burial performed by the Jews of Bukhara.

The Jews of Bukhara, especially during the Soviet era, tried to preserve their religious rites, customs, and traditions. Funerals and related ceremonies are the most striking example of this. It should be noted that the funeral rites of the Jews of Bukhara can be seen as a sign of respect and reverence of the living for the dead. It is noteworthy that the rituals associated with the funeral are also performed in the Turkic peoples of the country. This situation, which is common among the Jews of Bukhara, can be seen as a result of their interaction with Islamic culture. When analyzing these beliefs and traditions of the Jews of Bukhara, they are considered not only religious traditions but also a means of strengthening kinship, as important interconnected elements in maintaining a sense of religion and strengthening social unity.

In addition to the above, the customs associated with marriage and weddings also have a unique place in the lives of Jews. Studies show that in the tradition of the Jews of Bukhara, there were processes of interaction with the local population in the conduct of this ceremony. It is true that over time, some of the customs associated with this ceremony have been merged and compacted. This can be seen not only in the example of the Jews but also in the traditions of other nationalities in the country.

Examining the situation of Bukharian Jews who immigrated to countries such as Israel and the United States, it should be noted that many of the wedding and wedding ceremonies in Turkestan continue, albeit partially, in their new places of immigration. Some of the conditions created by the modern lifestyle also have an impact on the purity and health of the cultural traditions in the

region. An example of this is the fact that men are not allowed to participate in the "kashchinon" ceremony, and due to economic difficulties, the parties that were previously held separately are now being merged. From now on, it may be difficult to talk about "true Bukhara Jewish culture."

#### **REFERENCES:**

1. Birnbaum P. Encyclopedia of Jewish Concepts. –New-York. Hebrew Publishing Company, 1991.
2. Cooper A. "Feasting, Memorializing, Praying, and Remaining Jewish in the Soviet Union: The Case of the Bukharan Jews". Jewish Life After The USSR. Bloomington. 2003.
3. Cooper A. Negotiating Identity in The Context of Diaspora, Dispersion, and Reunion: The Bukharan Jews and Jewish Peoplehood. –Columbia. Columbia University, 2000.
4. Durmus Arik. The Jews of Bukhara. –Ankara. Kitabci, 2005.
5. Dymshits V. Facing West: Oriental Jews of Central Asia and the Caucasus. –Amsterdam. 1997.
6. F.Abdulboriy. Yawmalqiyamatbayna-l-islamwa-l-masihyyawa-l-yahudiyya. Dar al-Afaqal-arabiya.
7. Field research. Interview with the leader of the Khal-Yahudi Jewish religious community.
8. Firestone R. Understanding Judaism. - Istanbul.
9. Galaxa (Kitsurshulxanarux). Compiler and translator YegudaVeksler. - Jerusalem. «Shamir», 1994. Chastchetvertaya. SUBBOTA.
10. Genesis, 3: 3; Genesis, 2: 16-17; Psalm 89: 4 // Bible. Turkey. The Society for the Translation of the Bible, 1996.
11. Ismail Tashpinar. According to Jewish sources, the belief in the Hereafter in Judaism. - Istanbul, GelenekYayinlari, 2003.
12. Karimov J. "Kiddushin", "Ktubba" / Dictionary of religious studies. –Samarkand. Imam Bukhari International Center, 2017.
13. Karimov J. Bar mitzvah / Dictionary of religious studies / Editor-in-chief: Z.Islamov. – Samarkand. Imam Bukhari International Center, 2017.
14. Karimov J. Brit Mila / Dictionary of Religious Studies / Editor-in-Chief: Z.Islamov. – Samarkand. Imam Bukhari International Center, 2017.
15. Mezuzah. Electronic Jewish encyclopedia (<https://eleven.co.il/judaism/commandments-and-precepts/12683/>)
16. Muxamedov Sh. Buxarskieevrei (voprosyreligii, istorii, prazdnikiio bychai). - Bukhara. Bukhara Publishing House, 2007.
17. Neusner J. The Routledge Dictionary of Judaism. –New York-London. Routledge, 2000.
18. Patai R. Jadid al-Islam. The Jewish New Muslims of Meshhed, -Detroit. Ayne State University Press. 1997.
19. Pilkington S.M. Religiimira. Judaism. FAIR-PRESS, 1999.

- 20.** Sa'diya al-Fayumi. Al-Amanatwa-l-itiqadaat. Leiden, 1882.
- 21.** Vixnovich V.L. Judaism. –SPb. Peter, 2006.
- 22.** Z.L.Amitin-Shapiro. Ocherkpravovogobytasredneaziatskixevreev. –Moscow. «Knijniki», 2014.

## COOPERATION OF THE REPUBLIC OF CENTRAL ASIA IN THE SPHERE OF EDUCATION AND ENLIGHTENMENT

**Saidakbar Agzamkhodjaev\***

\*Professor,  
Department of the "History and Source Studies of Islam IRCICA",  
International Islamic Academy of Uzbekistan,  
Tashkent, UZBEKISTAN  
Email id: saidakbar1953@gmail.com

**DOI: 10.5958/2278-4853.2022.00143.4**

---

### ABSTRACT

*The article analyzes the state and issues of cooperation between the republics of Central Asia in the field of education and enlightenment. Attention is paid to the education of student youth in the spirit of patriotism, international and interreligious tolerance, and given the direction of the specialty; it is proposed to introduce new educational special courses into the system of teaching social and humanitarian sciences. It is noted that in the process of reforming the education system, inter-republican cooperation is a priority and a necessary condition for the equal entry of the Central Asian states into the world community.*

**KEYWORDS:** *Republics Of Central Asia, Culture, Education, Enlightenment, Higher Educational Institutions Of Uzbekistan, Social And Humanitarian Disciplines, Interethnic Tolerance.*

---

### INTRODUCTION

The education system is the basis of any civilization, a decisive factor in progress and successful socio-economic advancement. Economic growth and a high level of people's well-being are achieved where the problems of education are given priority attention.

The President of the Republic of Uzbekistan Shavkat Mirziyoyev repeatedly notes that "...peace and tranquility of people, friendship and harmony in our multinational state, respect for a working person, creation for all people, regardless of their nationality and faith, an absolutely equal position in our society has always been and will certainly remain the most important, decisive condition for achieving the goals that we have set for ourselves.

Therefore, deeply interrelated tasks – the successful reform of all spheres of life and sustainable development, on the one hand, and the preservation of socio-political stability, on the other, form the core of the policy pursued in the republic.

After the formation of new independent states in the Central Asian region, one of the topical issues was the formation of equal and mutually beneficial relations between them on the basis of generally recognized norms and principles. The peoples of this region felt the need to work together to build their future, to establish good-neighborly interstate relations, mutually beneficial economic and cultural ties in the new conditions.



The geographical location of Uzbekistan at the crossroads of important trade routes, economic and cultural cooperation with many states had a great impact on the religious and cultural life of local peoples. Such feelings as reverence for a person and respect for others, respect for elders, regardless of the nationality of religious views, have become the highest qualities of the peoples of Central Asia. It is these factors that form not only the spiritual and educational, but also the spiritual foundations of the tolerance of our people.

The national character, age-old ethno-cultural and ethno-social ties of the peoples of Central Asia took shape over a long course of development of social relations. For many centuries, the peoples of Central Asia have been internationalizing an ethno-cultural tradition, which indicates the deep antiquity of the friendship of peoples, the dialectical relationship and interdependence of the national in the customs of neighboring peoples.

In the conditions of Central Asia, the importance of the desire to live in society is great, and this confirms that the concepts of "friendliness" and "consent" have become a national custom that has historical, national and religious roots. For more than 30 years of independent development of the Republic of Uzbekistan, neighbor with neighbor, relative with relative, with each other live in respect and harmony. And these high qualities are invariably maintained and developed.

In order to study and promote the basic concepts and principles of spiritual development, interethnic and interreligious tolerance, an order was adopted to introduce into the higher education system of Uzbekistan such disciplines as "Fundamentals of Spirituality and Enlightenment", "Theory and Practice of Building a Democratic Society in Uzbekistan", "Religious Studies", "Education" and others.

One of the main tasks of the teaching staff working in this field of education is the high-quality teaching of these disciplines, the cornerstone of which should be the process of educating young people in the spirit of tolerance towards representatives of other nations and nationalities, as well as patriotism and love for their homeland.

To date, one may encounter the problem of motivation among students in the study of these disciplines; this is due to the fact that such items are not specialized and are perceived as "useless". And in this situation, a lot depends on how competently the system of social and humanitarian education is organized, and teachers can show students the importance of obtaining humanitarian knowledge for their personal and professional life, as well as being in demand not only in the present, but also in the future.

To this end, the higher educational institutions of the republic and the Ministry of Higher and Secondary Specialized Education, developing international relations in the field of higher education and, comprehensively studying the experience of the developed countries of the world, set themselves the following tasks:

- Improving the qualifications of the teaching staff of universities;
- Creation of new curricula, modern educational and methodical literature for various areas of education;
- Wide participation of the teaching staff of universities in foreign scientific and practical seminars, symposiums and conferences;

- Participation of the faculty and students of higher education institutions of the republic in foreign exchange programs and trainings;
- Invitation of foreign teachers and professors to work in the universities of the republic in order to improve the educational process and exchange experience.

Today, the main task of the development of any university is the training of highly qualified specialists who are in demand in the modern labor market, and the construction of a new education strategy should contribute to the socialization of a person in the broadest sense.

The socialization of students is carried out not only in preparation for the effective manifestation of oneself in professional activities, but also in public and social life. Despite the fact that the reform of higher education has led to a reduction in social and humanitarian disciplines and a decrease in the hours taught, the requirements enshrined in educational standards provide for the formation of a wide range of general cultural competencies in future specialists. In this regard, one of the urgent problems today is the search and implementation of a new concept of humanization of higher education.

We must understand that the active life position of students in solving the issues of their own destiny and professional career is formed in the process of studying at universities not only special disciplines - this task can be largely helped to solve social and humanitarian disciplines. Therefore, the task of enhancing the role of liberal arts education is especially acute for universities.

In order to educate the youth of the republics of Central Asia in the spirit of patriotism, interethnic tolerance, it is proposed, taking into account the direction of the specialty, to introduce into the system of teaching the social and humanitarian sciences educational special courses such as "History of the development of the states of Central Asia", "Culture, national customs and traditions of the peoples of Central Asia", "Islamic culture and art of Central Asia: past and present", "Interethnic and interreligious tolerance in Central Asia", "Enlightenment movement in Central Asia at the beginning of the 20th century".

Thus, social and humanitarian disciplines will contribute to:

1. Raising the general cultural level of development;
2. The formation of students' civil, moral and other professionally significant qualities, due to the peculiarities of professional activity;
3. Active public position, social and professional responsibility;
4. Professional and communicative competence;
5. Needs for a healthy lifestyle, readiness and ability to endure great psychological stress.

It should be noted that historical, cultural and ethnographic scientific disciplines have a decisive influence on the development of the intellectual potential of the individual and the nation as a whole, and contribute to the sustainable development of society.

In the vector of integration of the Central Asian republics, according to an intergovernmental agreement in the field of education, an annual exchange of students of universities of the two countries takes place. Intercultural interaction on the Internet promotes the establishment of

contacts for cooperation and the creation of new joint projects in the field of education and enlightenment.

International cooperation of Uzbekistan in the field of higher education is carried out within the framework of intergovernmental and interdepartmental agreements with the Russian Federation, Azerbaijan, Kazakhstan, Turkmenistan, Tajikistan, Kyrgyzstan, the People's Republic of China, the Republic of Korea, India, Malaysia, Egypt, the Sultanate of Oman and a number of other countries.

Today, the universities of Uzbekistan maintain direct cooperation with leading universities in the USA, Germany, Great Britain, France, Italy, Japan, India, the Russian Federation within the framework of direct interuniversity agreements.

Of particular note is the active participation of the universities of Uzbekistan in the educational programs of the European Union Tempus and Erasmus Mundus.

Tempus projects are mostly devoted to the development of curricula for master's and undergraduate programs in the field of technical disciplines and applied technologies. Higher education institutions of the republic in cooperation with European universities are working on developing new and improving existing curricula in various disciplines.

It should be especially noted that Tempus projects are also aimed at improving the qualifications of the teaching staff of universities. Within the framework of the projects, short-term seminars, scientific and practical conferences, advanced training courses in European universities are held.

Universities of Uzbekistan also participate in the EU Erasmus Mundus program, a program aimed at supporting the academic mobility of students, teachers, as well as strengthening cooperation between universities. Within the framework of the program, university teachers and students get the opportunity to study and participate in scientific internships in European universities.

Important forms of cooperation in the field of science, education and enlightenment are scientific and practical international conferences and symposiums. So, for example, in order to deepen cooperation in the field of education and literature, a competition was held among students of universities in Uzbekistan "The world of Abai is my world", dedicated to the study of the creative heritage of the great Kazakh educator and poet AbayKunanbayev. Another competition for the best essay on the topic "Century-old friendship between Uzbekistan and Kazakhstan: history and modernity" aroused great and genuine interest among students of Uzbekistan.

In October 2021, the International Islamic Academy of Uzbekistan organized an international conference called "Culture, religion, customs and traditions of the peoples of Central Asia".

Studies show that at present, bilateral agreements with stable economic and peaceful development of states are a real tool for the integration process in the field of education. The development of international cooperation is an important component of reforming educational policy, taking into account global trends in the educational field and generally accepted standards of education.

The cooperation of the Central Asian republics in the field of education cannot be considered only within the framework of modernity. Their cultural interaction is rooted in the distant past, back in the periods of Turkic civilization. However, after independence, educational contacts between these states did not stop and developed on an equal footing.

The relations of these republics in the field of education have undergone significant changes in their essence, in terms of the tasks, goals pursued and organizational and legal norms. Cooperation in the process of reforming the education system is a priority and a necessary condition for the equal entry of the Central Asian republics into the world community, since it contributes to the definition of ultimate goals and objectives of reforms in the field of science, culture and education.

Thus, it can be assumed that cooperation between Uzbekistan, Kazakhstan, Tajikistan, Kyrgyzstan and Turkmenistan in the field of education in the future will be even closer. This is due, first of all, to the fact that the political problems of international relations and the global development of these states are interested in the stable interaction of cultural values.

#### **REFERENCES:**

1. Rakhimov M. Modern Multilateral Relations In Central Asia. Tashkent, Fan. 2020. 224 P.
2. Agzamkhodjaev S. The Formation And Socio-Political Activity Of The Society" Shuroi Ulamo" //Orientemoderno. – 2007. – T. 87. – №. 1. – C. 1-12.
3. Starr F. Lost Enlightenment. Central Asia's Golden Age. From Arab Conquest To Tamerlane. Princeton University Press, 2013.
4. Saidazimova G. "Regional Integration In Central Asia: Realities, Challenges, And Potentials," Central Asia And Caucasus, 2000, (3). <http://Www.Cac.Org/Journal/Cac-09-2000/10.Saidazim.Shtml>
5. Boyzakova U. Секція: Історія //Проблеми Та Перспектив розвитку Науки На Початку третього тисячоліття У Країнах Європи Та Азії. – С. 21.
6. Saidovichagzamkhodjaev S. Reforming Movement In Central Asia In The Beginning Of Xx Century: New Interpretation And Reevaluation //Reforming Movement In Central Asia In The Beginning Of Xx Century. – 2003. – С. 1000-1009.
7. Farxodjonova N. F. Relation To National Culture In The Condition Spiritual Renew Of Society In The Republic Of Uzbekistan //Мировая наука. – 2018. – №. 6. – С. 14-17.
8. Agzamkhodjaev S. S., Saidovich A. S. The Jadid Movement For Update And Society Reform //Archive Of Conferences. – 2020. – Т. 9. – №. 1. – С. 215-218.
9. Агзамходжаев С. Движение Прогрессистов В Создании Автономной Демократической Республики В Туркестане //Turkicstudiesjournal. – 2020. – Т. 2. – №. 1. – С. 6-22.
10. Morrison A. 'Studies On Central Asia', A Special Issue Of Orientemoderno, Lxxxvii (1), 2007. – 2010.

## ABU HAFS NASAFI'S CONTRIBUTION TO THE DEVELOPMENT OF ISLAMIC CIVILIZATION

**Abdulatif Alloqulov\***

\*Senior Teacher,  
Department of Islamic Studies and Islamic Civilization, ICESCO,  
UZBEKISTAN

**DOI: 10.5958/2278-4853.2022.00144.6**

---

### ABSTRACT

*In the eleventh and twelfth century, Abu Hafs Nasafi took extra care to describe the theory of Moturidism in a clear and succinct manner. His student Burhoniddin Marginani translated his work "Aqid" from Arabic into Persian as a result. The fact that the scholar "Aqid's" work was adopted as a textbook in the regions where the Hanafi school spread prompted the production of several comments on it. The significance of a work determines whether it has endured to the present day.*

**KEYWORDS:** *Aqida, Kalam, Aqyd, Abu Hafs Nasafi, Saami Evidence, Descriptive Evidence.*

---

### INTRODUCTION

In the late eleventh and early twelfth centuries, many scholars emerged from Mawarannahr who made an invaluable contribution to the development of Islamic civilization. One such scholar is Abu Hafs Umar al-Nasafi (461-537/1069-1142). He is mentioned in the sources as a scholar who was actively involved in the development of various fields of Islamic knowledge in his time. In the books of tabaqat, he is mentioned as a mufasssir, muhaddith, faqih, mutakallim, sufi, poet and lexicographer. In particular, Abu Hafs al-Nasafi wrote works on the commentary of the Qur'an, such as "al-Taysir fit tafsir" (Lightness in the science of tafsir), "al-Akmal wal-atwal" (Perfect and long) and "Tafsiri Nasafi" (Nasafi's tafsir).

Scholars are conducting research on these books and doing extensive work to create their critical texts. Nasafi also wrote his commentary on Imam Bukhari's "Sahih al-Bukhari" entitled "Sharhu Jami' al-Sahih" (Commentary on Sahih Collection). This work reveals his activity as a muhaddith. According to the sources, Nasafi's chain of transmission to reach Imam Bukhari was more than 50 and he quoted all of them in the preface to this commentary. In addition, the scholar has authored books on hadith, such as "al-Qand fi zikri 'ulamai Samarkand" (a sweet book of Samarkand scholars), "Majmu'atu ahadith" (A collection of hadiths), "Tatwilul asfar li tahsilil akhbar" (A long journey to study the hadiths).

The works of the scholar on fiqh (Islamic jurisprudence) and usul al-fiqh served as the basis for new directions in his time. In particular, in his book "Manzuma al-Nasafiya fil khilafiyat" (Nasafi's manzuma on disputes) the differences between the sects and the minor differences between Abu Hanifa (80-150/699-767) and his two disciples Abu Yusuf Ya'qub (d. 178/795) and Muhammad bin Hasan al-Shaybani (d. 189/805) were expressed for the first time in the genre of poetry. Also, in his work "Tilbatut talaba" (Student's wish), the terms and phrases related to the science of fiqh are briefly and clearly illustrated. This work was also a novelty for

its time. This is because through this work, the scholar compiled the terms of fiqh and created a glossary of Hanafi jurisprudence.

Abu Hafs al-Nasafi is one of the scholars who also worked in the field of Sufism and left a rich scientific legacy in this field. In particular, his book “al-Kitab fil bayan al-mazahib al-mutasawwifa” (Book on the Explanation of Sufi Sects) describes 12 sects on Sufism, of which only the Ahl al-Haqq are on the right path and the rest are misguided groups.

Nasafi’s most famous and more translated work “Aqaeed” is still memorized by students as a source that expresses the basics of Maturidiyya teachings. More than 50 commentaries have been written on this book so far. Also, the fact that “Aqaeed” is being currently commented in Arabic and Urdu shows how important the work is. This work also played an important role in the regional spread of the doctrine of Maturidiyya. The book was written in Arabic by Abu Hafs al-Nasafi in Samarkand on the instructions of Malikshah, the ruler of the Seljuks, and its translation into Persian was made by the scholar’s disciple Burhanuddin al-Marghinani.

The disciples raised by Abu Hafs al-Nasafi and the rich scientific legacy he left behind define his contribution to the development of Islamic civilization. One of the most pressing issues today is the study of the scholar’s works preserved in the world’s manuscript funds and their delivery to readers.

Sam'ani, who bibliographed the storytellers, noted: "Nasafi's writings were very numerous." More than 100 Nasafi works can be found in A'lamu-l-akhyor min fukahoi madhabi-n-Nu'man al-mukhtar, according to Mahmud ibn Suleiman Kafawi, who also quoted from a few of them. According to sources, Nasafi was a jurist, author, upright imam, usulist, mutakallim, commentator, muhaddis, nakhvi, lexicographer, historian, hafiz, mufti, poet, and mutafannin (master of various sciences). He also made significant contributions to the fields of tafsir, aqida, hadith, and jurisprudence.

Analyzing the works of Nasafi in the books of tarojim, one can divide them into the following branches of science:

Books on tafsir and Qur'anic sciences:

"al-Akmalu-l-atwal", "Tafsiri Nasafi" (Tafsir Nasafi), "at-Taysir fi-t-tafsir".

Works on Hadith and Hadith Studies:

“Kitobu-l-kand fi zikri ulamai Samarkand” (a book as sweet as sugar, compiled by the scientists of Samarkand), ”Al-Yawakit fi-l-mawakit” (Ruby information about times), ”Sharkhu-l-Jami'i-s-sahih” (Commentary on the collection "Sahih", "As-sabi'iyat wa-s-sam'iyat" ("Sevens and hearing"), "Tatvilu-l-asfar li tahsilu-l-akhbar" (Long journey for the study of hadith), "Al-Yakut" (Ruby), "Majmu'atu ahadith" (Collection of Hadith), "Ti'dodu-sh-shuyuhi li Umar".

Works on usul-l-fiqh and the sciences of fiqh:

At-Tahsil (Compilation), Sharhu Usuli-l-Karkhi (Commentary on the Karkhi method), Al-Manzumatu-n-Nasafiya fi-l-khilafiyat (Nasafi's poem on controversial issues), Tilbatu-t -talaba" (The Desire of the Disciple), "Al-Mu'taqadot" (Things to Believe in), "Mashari'u-sh-Shari' fi furu'i-l-hanafiyah" (Acts Presented by Shari' in the Hanafi furu'u-l-fiqh), "Nazmu-l-Jomi'i-s-sag'ir" (poem "Jomi'u-s-sag'ir").



A work devoted to Sufism and sects. "Al-Kitab fi-l-bayani-l-mazahibi-l-mutasaufiga" (Book on the explanation of Sufi sects)

Nasafi's poems, often found in his books, show that he has a high ability in the field of poetry. An example of this is the poetic interpretation of most of the hadiths in Kitabu-l-Kand. He is also considered one of the first lawyers. The collection entitled "Al-Ashar bi-l-mukhtar mina-l-ash'ar" (Poems selected from poems) includes the most famous poems of the scientist. It consists of 20 volumes and is also found in the sources as "al-Ashar".

The works of Abu Hafs Nasafi related to other areas: "History of Bukhara", "Risala fi-l-firaki-l-islamiya" (Treatise on Islamic sects), "Da'watu-l-mustag'firin" (Appeals of those who ask for forgiveness), Musa ibn Abdullah Ag'mati Abu When Hafs came to Samarkand in 516/1122 to study hadith from Nasafi, Nasafi wrote the following book dedicated to him: collection of Nakhzabi to the Maghreb guest). In addition, Nasafi is the author of "Al-Jumalu-l-ma'surot" (Nakli's suggestions), "al-Ijazatu-l-mutarjama wa-l-hurufu-l-mu'jama" (translation permission and mixed letters) , "al-Munabbihot" (authors of Tanbi), "al-Hisn" (Kurgan) and a number of other rare sources.

#### **REFERENCES:**

1. Абу Ҳафс Насафий. Матну-л-ақоид. - Истанбул: Боязит, 1893. - Б. 106.
2. Asuman Hoca Kaleminden. Ehl-i Sünnet Akaidi. - Istanbul: Dila Filimcilik Yayıncılık, 2017. - 472 s.
3. Абдунносир Латиф. Тавзийху-л-ақоиди-н-Насафия. - Исломобод: Жомиъа ризавия, 2010. - Б. 13.
4. Муҳаммадаминов С. Абу Ҳафс ан-Насафийнинг “Матлаъ ан-нужум ва мажмаъ ал-улум” асари ва унинг Марказий Осиё ислом илмлари ривожига тутган ўрни (XI аср охири - XII аср ўрталари): т.ф.н. дис... автореф. - Т. ЎзР ФА ШИ, 2012. - 26 б.
5. Ömer Faruk Hilmi. Nesefi Akaidi Tam Metin Kelime Tercüme ve Şerhi. - Istanbul: İlimşehri Yayınları, 2013. - 285 s.
6. Rudolph U. Al-Maturidi und die sunnitische Theologie in Samarkand. - Leiden, New York, Koln: Brill, 1997. - 360 p.
7. Suleyman Uludag. Kelam ilmi ve Islam akaidi. - Istanbul: Dergah Yayinlari, 1999. - 398 б.
8. Fatih K., Hüsameddin V., Abdullah H., Emin Ali Yüksel. Ömer Nesefi Akaidi ve Tercümesi Kelime Anlamli. - Istanbul: Kitapkalbi Yayıncılık, 2016. - 96 s.

## EDUCATION OF YOUTH IN CONDITIONS OF NATIONAL INDEPENDENCE USING THE WORKS OF OUR GREAT SCIENTISTS

**G. K. Zaripova\*;** **A. I. Hikmatov Lieutenant Colonel\*\*;**  
**O` . K. Temirov Lieutenant Colonel\*\*\***

\*Associate Professor,  
Candidate of Pedagogical Sciences,  
Bukhara State University of the Faculty of Information Technologies,  
UZBEKISTAN  
Email id: dersuzala1972@gmail.com,

\*\*Teacher,  
Special Training Cycle of the Faculty of Military Education,  
Bukhara State University, UZBEKISTAN  
Email id: anvar.hikmatov@gmail.com

\*\*\*Teacher,  
Cycle of Methodological Training,  
Faculty of Military Education,  
Bukhara State University, UZBEKISTAN  
Email id: o`lmas.temirov@gmail.com

**DOI: 10.5958/2278-4853.2022.00145.8**

---

### ABSTRACT

*This article is devoted to the education of young people in conditions of national independence using the works of our great scientists.*

**KEYWORDS:** *High Moral, Spiritual, Information Technology, Perfect Man, Raising Children, Harmony, Our National Pride, Historical Heritage And Great Ancestors, The Law «On Education», «National Training Program».*

---

### INTRODUCTION

In order to strengthen and develop its independence, our country is carrying out significant work and measures aimed at developing a person of high moral, spiritual and spiritual maturity of the youth. In today's rapidly developing 21st century, when the minds of young people are occupied with information and information technology, training them to become spiritually rich, perfect people remains an urgent problem. Solving this problem, teachers, educators and scientists-educators conduct in-depth observations and research.

We have long known that raising children has always been the main task of our ancestors, and one of the first tasks facing us is to educate the younger generation in a harmonious, healthy, sincere, spiritual and rational way of life. Currently, the repertoire of the press and media, cinema, theater is organized in a national context. All their activities are aimed at deepening the study of the socio-economic aspects of our society, the formation of spiritual changes, the use of the sources of our spirituality, our national pride, historical heritage and the works of our great ancestors.

At the same time, our people have a high attitude towards the profession. After our country gained independence, this need has increased. Some aspects of the "Law on Education" [2] and the "National Curriculum of Education" [3] serve as proof of this. The current process of education and upbringing, along with the restoration of our national profession, involves the development of modern professions. Since the process of youth education includes general education, as well as specialized subjects, industrial education, there are certain aspects of managing this process.

On August 17, 2021, the President of Uzbekistan Shavkat Mirziyoyev, in an interview with the Yangi Uzbekiston newspaper, spoke about the significance of the concepts of the Third Renaissance and New Uzbekistan. "The idea of "New Uzbekistan", which is deeply rooted in the hearts of all our people and is becoming a nationwide movement, is based on the dreams and aspirations of our great ancestors, as well as on the first and second awakenings," the head of state said.

According to him, the land of Uzbekistan in ancient times was the cradle of two great revivals - the First (Enlightenment - IX-XII centuries) and the Second (Temurids - XIV-XV centuries) Revival. "This is a historical fact, proven and recognized by world science," he added.

"Another important process of Revival is going on in our country. That is why the words "New Uzbekistan" and "Third Revival" resonate in our lives and inspire our people for great goals," concluded Shavkat Mirziyoyev [9].

All Eastern and Western scholars agree that the First Renaissance, which took place in Europe between the 15th and 17th centuries, took place in our country several hundred years ago, in the ninth and eleventh centuries. Of course, there are historical reasons for this great rise. During this period, new reforms and laws were introduced that were very important for the development of the state, and radical changes took place, from land and water relations to good neighborly taxes. Innovations in government and politics united scientists around noble ideas, increased interest in various sciences, especially mathematics, astronomy, chemistry, medicine, law, geodesy, and laid the foundations for modern theories of world order. Our great ancestors, such as Muhammad Musa al-Khwarizmi, Abu Raykhan Beruni, Abu Ali ibn Sino, Ahmad al-Fargani Abu Nasr al-Farabi, Yusuf Khas Hajib, Mahmud Kashgari, Mahmud Zamakhshari, Imam Bukhari, Imam Termeotur Abul Muina Nasafi were a great desire to become excellent thinkers of their time, and they became not only scientists, but also world masters in their sciences. It can be said without exaggeration that this period laid the foundations for the rise of world development. Proof of this is the Mamun Academy in Khorezm. It is true that this university, which brought together brilliant thinkers, served as an accelerator not only for its region, but for the whole world.

The Second Renaissance is closely connected with the name of our great ancestor Amir Temur, who carried out political, economic and social reforms not only in our region, but also in vast geographical areas. Thanks to him, a state arose based on a strong central government and a favorable environment for new cultural and scientific development. Amir Temur gathered talented scientists, poets, craftsmen and architects from different regions in the big cities of his vast kingdom and created all the necessary conditions for the development of science. Such a reasonable policy strengthened the scientific and cultural power of the country.

Although the Second Renaissance has been called the "Golden Age of Islamic Culture", with the development of space science and mathematics in our country, the second Renaissance began.

During this period, such great scientists as Imam Bukhari, Imam Termezi, Imam Moturidi, Burkhaniddin Marginoni, Abul Muin Nasafi, unique scientists such as Kazizada Rumi, Mirzo Ulugbek, Giyosiddin Kashi, Ali Kushchi, Lutfi, Hakkoki, Babur, Hafiz Khorazi emerged classical poets and thinkers such as Mirza. Such historians as Sharafiddin Ali Yazdi, Mirkhand, Khandamir, Mahmud Muzahib, Kamoliddin Behzod, many calligraphers and musicians, musicologists and architects became famous all over the world. As in the first period of the Renaissance, there was an influx of people from all over the world who wanted to study science.

The words of the head of our state in his speech “We raise the issue of the Third Renaissance as a strategic task and raise it to the level of a national idea” reflect the great goals of large-scale radical reforms in our country.

“We consider preschool and school education, the system of higher and secondary specialized education, scientific and cultural institutions as four integral rings of the future Renaissance. We consider kindergarten teachers, school teachers, and professors, scientific and creative intellectuals to be the four pillars of the new Renaissance. I am sure that dear parents will definitely support this initiative and become the fifth ring, the fifth pillar of the new Renaissance. And if I say that this will be the strongest pillar of our spiritual and educational life, I think you will fully support it,” he said [9].

The need for a transition to continuous education in our country is determined not only by a number of socio-economic, political, moral, organizational and pedagogical factors, but also by ensuring the improvement of the human personality. Continuing the noble work of the first President, President Mirziyoyev, in his speech at a joint meeting of the Oliy Majlis dedicated to the inauguration of the President of the Republic of Uzbekistan, highly appreciated the work of our scientists and teachers: “We know and appreciate the selfless work of our esteemed intellectuals - representatives of science and technology, especially our respected teachers and respected academicians, representatives of culture, literature and art, sports - in the creation and further enhancement of this potential” [4, 15].

As long as the existence of man and society is determined by the presence of ideas of goodness and justice, their development is progressive, progressive. Ideologies containing ideas and principles of violence and obscurantism have a negative impact on this process. However, they are not able to stop the movement of mankind towards lofty ideals based on the ideas of peace and freedom, brotherhood and cooperation, progress and prosperity.

The idea of educating a harmonious, comprehensively developed personality reflects the constant desire of a person to master the achievements of both national and universal, world culture, to spiritual, moral and physical perfection. High ideas about such a personality are reflected in the works of great thinkers - Abu Nasr Farobi and Alisher Navoi.

High moral purity is achievable only in a society of free people who profess lofty ideals of life. Therefore, in our country, great attention is paid to the education of the younger generation, the formation of spirituality and morality of citizens, and the improvement of the quality level of spiritual and educational work. In this aspect, the National Training Program and the movement “For the Health of the Generation” have become a nationwide, nationwide affair, an integral part of this process.

The formation of a spiritually rich and moral, harmoniously developed personality is inextricably linked with the general process of democratic transformations in the country, the establishment of the idea of national independence in the minds of the people.

The idea of independence, especially among young people, is affirmed in the minds and hearts of people through various forms and methods of education and upbringing. This process is long, complex, requiring a radical revision of the content of the activities of all structures, bodies and institutions of lifelong education.

In this case, it is necessary to solve the following tasks:

- on the basis of a comprehensive study of the social characteristics of the population, to determine effective ways and methods of bringing the idea of national independence to the consciousness of every citizen;
- on the basis of the National Program for the Training of Personnel, carry out continuous work to form in the minds of schoolchildren and students the national idea and ideology of independence;
- in curricula, textbooks and manuals to deeply reflect the essence and content of the ideology of independence;
- raise ideological education in schools, lyceums, colleges, institutes and universities to the level of modern requirements;
- deepen the knowledge of teaching staff in matters of ideology.

Thus, the human personality, the possibilities of its harmonious development and self-realization is considered as the highest goal of social development, in the process of which the necessary conditions are created for the full realization of all its potentialities, the achievement of harmony in the socio-economic and spiritual sphere of life, the highest flowering of a particular human personality. At the same time, in the modern interpretation of humanism, the emphasis is on the integral, universal formation of the human personality. This universality is comprehended as a harmonious development of its intellectual, spiritual, moral and aesthetic qualities. Thus, from the standpoint of humanism, the ultimate goal of education is that each person can become a full-fledged subject of activity, cognition and communication, that is, a free, self-sufficient person responsible for everything that happens in the world. Consequently, the degree of humanization of the educational process is determined by the extent to which this process creates the prerequisites for the self-realization of the individual, the disclosure of all the natural inclinations inherent in it, its ability to self-development, responsibility and creativity [12].

Since the students of the continuing education system are mostly teenagers and young people, it is important to remember that management activities are organized with students who are in the most difficult age of crisis at a young age. In order to involve industrial enterprises, guardians and sponsors in the educational process, organize internships and career guidance, the “National Program” of personnel training [3] requires the education of an independent thinker, the attention of the leader should be in this area.

When teaching students, the following important guiding principles should be considered [11]: achieving cooperation in the right direction of student independence; achievement of democracy and self-government in the process of organizing the teaching staff; establish cooperation with

professors, teachers, parents, guardians, sponsors; avoidance of formality; correct interpersonal relationships; democratization of education.

Yusuf Khas Khadzhib In 1069, while studying the work “Kutadgu bilig” [8] (knowledge leading to happiness), the poet wrote about morality, knowledge, raising children, how to behave in public, he thinks of himself as a messenger enlightenment about its importance and value, the rules of hospitality, its way of life, many issues of the spiritual world of man.

In the epic, the poet promotes the idea of a struggle for a centralized state, a wise, fair government, for the time of the people, the state, the head of state and citizen, scientists and the ruler, economic and cultural ties. As for neighboring countries, the debt of the ruling classes to the people caused very progressive socio-philosophical observations: he singled out peasants, artisans and shepherds as categories that create the material wealth of society. Firdavsi, Ibn Sina, Beruni, Nasir Khisray, Yusuf Khas Hajib, who continued the traditions, in this work one can find ideas on mathematics, astronomy, geography, philosophy, logic, politics, medicine, in a word, all the knowledge of that time. This shows that they were with deep and wide knowledge.

Our country is celebrating the 680th anniversary of the birth of the great commander, who is a symbol of deep respect and respect for our youth. When we study the life and work of Amir Temur, we are convinced that the work of our world-famous ancestor "Temur's Statutes" is a great work. In addition to the biography of Amir Temur, the play provides valuable information about the structure of the state and the army, as well as about the history of the Chigatai people for more than fifty years (1342-1405). Amir Temur was an intelligent, experienced and political figure. He predetermined what kind of central apparatus of the state he wants to form and what social categories the local government will rely on, officials and their qualities, as well as their duties and responsibilities. The role of ministers, emirs and provincial deputies in government was enormous. Therefore, Amir Temur paid special attention to their selection and appointment [6].

According to him, these should be faithful, morally pure, just, peace-loving and enterprising people. According to the author of the Charter, for example, ministers should have four qualities: “1) originality, pure pedigree and greatness; 2) common sense; 3) know about the state of the army and the people, take care of them, treat them well; 4) willpower - endurance, tolerance and gentleness” [7].

According to the book "Temurnom", Amir Temur, as a result of the development of education, science, crafts, art, culture and architecture in his country, called on young people to be courageous, courageous, morally healthy people. Showed the guiding principles of parenting. That is why our ancestor Amir Temur was considered the most respected person in the world [7].

Considering that the classical heritage of our great ancestors can serve the development of our nation, the formation of national self-consciousness among young people and the upbringing and development of a harmoniously developed person, the Law "On Education" [2] and "National Education" [3] and a radical reform of the education and training system President of Uzbekistan, gives positive results in the education of a harmoniously developed generation, makes a significant contribution to the formation of an ideal person.

As the first President of our country, Islam Karimov, said: “Spirituality and enlightenment are the strength of a person, people, society, state. Without it, there is no happiness. Not only old history, but also modern history gives many examples of this” [1]. Pedagogy has long been



concerned with the issue of ideal human education. Because the idea of an ideal person is an old dream of mankind, and a number of factors are important in order to bring it to this level. These are: social environment, education, innate abilities, amateur performance.

The system of continuous education and training will be managed by the state through the structural transformation of state and non-state educational institutions and their gradual development. The competence of educational authorities at all levels is determined in accordance with the "Law on Education" [2]. A legal framework for education will be developed. The rights and independence of educational institutions in the conduct of financial and economic activities and the organization of the educational process will be expanded. Educational institutions are certified and accredited in the manner prescribed by the Cabinet of Ministers of the Republic of Uzbekistan, and after accreditation, the right to work in the field of education is granted [10].

#### **REFERENCES:**

1. Каримов И.А. Узбекистан за великое будущее. // – Ташкент: «Узбекистан». – 1998 г. – Стр. 62- стр.
2. Закон Республики Узбекистан «Об образовании». // Гармонично развитое поколение – основа развития Узбекистана (29 августа 1997г.). – Ташкент: «Шарқ». – 1997. 20-29- стр.
3. Национальная программа обучения. // Гармонично развитое поколение – основа развития Узбекистана. – Ташкент: «Шарқ». – 1997. 31-61- стр.
4. Шавкат Мирзиёев. Вместе мы построим свободное и процветающее демократическое государство Узбекистан. – Ташкент: «Узбекистан». – 2016 г. 15 - стр.
5. Шавкат Мирзиёев. Мы решительно продолжим наш путь национального развития и поднимем его на новый уровень. – Ташкент: «Узбекистан». - 2017 г. 17 - стр.
6. Миллий истиклол ғояси: асосий тушунча ва тамойиллар. // – Тошкент: «Янги аср авлоди». – 2001г. – 80- стр.
7. Темурнома. // – Тошкент: «Чўлпон». – 1990г. – Стр. 152.
8. Юсуф Хос Хожиб. Қутадғу билиг. // – Тошкент: «Юлдузча». – 1990. – Стр. 192.
9. Иброҳим Абдурахмонов, Министр инновационного развития, академик.  
<https://mininnovation.uz/uz/news/2449> и  
<https://yandex.ru/search/?text=uchinchi+renessans+haqida+Ibrohim+%D0%90bdurahmonov%2C+Innovatsion+rivojlanish+vaziri%2C+akademik&lr=10335&clid=2285101> va  
<https://www.gazeta.uz/uz/2021/08/17/renaissance/>
10. Г.К. Зарипова, Н.С. Сайидова, Б.Н. Тахиров, У.Х. Хайитов. Педагогическое сотрудничество преподавателя и студентов в кредитно-модульной системе высшего образования. - Наука, образование и культура, 2020.  
[https://scholar.google.com/citations?view\\_op=view\\_citation&hl=ru&user=1xFAX7AAAAAJ&citation\\_for\\_view=1xFAX7AAAAAJ:LkGwnXOMwfcC](https://scholar.google.com/citations?view_op=view_citation&hl=ru&user=1xFAX7AAAAAJ&citation_for_view=1xFAX7AAAAAJ:LkGwnXOMwfcC).
11. Г.К. Зарипова. Педагогическое сотрудничество в высшем образовании. Центр научных публикаций (buxdu. uz): Том 3 № 3 (2021): Maqola va tezislari (buxdu. uz).

[https://scholar.google.com/citations?view\\_op=view\\_citation&hl=ru&user=1xFax7AAAAAJ&citation\\_for\\_view=1xFax7AAAAAJ:ULOm3\\_A8WrAC](https://scholar.google.com/citations?view_op=view_citation&hl=ru&user=1xFax7AAAAAJ&citation_for_view=1xFax7AAAAAJ:ULOm3_A8WrAC).

- 12.** Г.К. Зарипова, К.И. Рузиева. Использование интерактивных методов в процессе обучения студентов компьютерным технологиям. - Проблемы педагогики, 2018.  
[https://scholar.google.com/citations?view\\_op=view\\_citation&hl=ru&user=1xFax7AAAAAJ&citation\\_for\\_view=1xFax7AAAAAJ:d1gkVwhDpl0C](https://scholar.google.com/citations?view_op=view_citation&hl=ru&user=1xFax7AAAAAJ&citation_for_view=1xFax7AAAAAJ:d1gkVwhDpl0C).

## THE PLACE AND ROLE OF ABU HAMID AL - GAZALI AND IBN AL - ARABI IN THE DEVELOPMENT OF ISLAMIC THOUGHT AND SUFISM

**Pulatov Sayyodbek Khasanovich\***

\*Teacher,  
Specialised Skhool № 1.6 Ferghana Region Kuvasay Town,  
UZBEKISTAN  
Email id: pulatovs@mail.ru

**DOI: 10.5958/2278-4853.2022.00146.X**

---

### ABSTRACT

*The article discusses the role of Imam al-Ghazali and Ibn al-Arabi in the development of Islamic philosophy, the views of Imam Ghazali on causality, skepticism, Ibn Arabi's views on creation of the world and man on the unity of the world.*

**KEYWORDS:** *Sufi, Al-Gazali, Ibn Arabi, Philosophy, Allah, God, Fano, Religious.*

---

### INTRODUCTION

In our country, «ensuring security, interethnic harmony and religious tolerance, as well as a well-thought-out foreign policy» has been identified as one of the strategic tasks[1:1-3]. Reforms in this area are also recognized worldwide and are valued as an example model of religious tolerance.

The following scientific and theoretical conclusions have been drawn from the philosophical-historical study of the subject of Sufi philosophy in the theological, religious-Islamic teachings of Abu Hamid al-Ghazali and Ibn Arabi.

First of all, mysticism is that the most blessed being created by Allah is the product of man's high rank, his intellect, his objective attitude towards both Allah and all that He has created, and most importantly, deep emotion, joy and suffering. It was noted at the beginning of the work that there are different opinions and analysis on the etymological meaning of the phrase «sufi». The way of life of mystics is characterized by asceticism. However, the Sufis did not completely renounce these world and existence, but the great Sufis, such as Imam al-Ghazali's and Ibn Arabi's, encouraged people to love Allah, to be active, to work, to be pious.

Eminent scientist, theologian, faqih and Sufi Abu Hamid Muhammad ibn Muhammad al-Ghazali's at-Tusi (1058-1111) was born in the city of Tus in northern Iran, in the village of Gazzal. Ghazali's works and ideas spread very quickly and widely in the Muslim Islamic world. A. Masse compares his authority in this regard with the European Thomas Aquinas (1225-1274) – a scholastic scholar of the Catholic religion, one of the pillars of the philosophy of religious Catholicism. In the twelfth and thirteenth centuries, the Jewish population of Arab Andalusia (Spain) was fluent in Arabic literature directly. In his critical views of Aristotle, Jesus Galevi follows the path of al-Ghazali's, showing that philosophy is not as clear as mathematics and logic.

Al-Ghazali's work has been translated into Hebrew many times. One of the first translators was Isaac Alabama. It was later translated into Latin and spread to Europe. With his numerous works, Imam al-Ghazali's had a significant impact on the development of world science, and later on the

emergence and development of philosophical teachings of eastern and western thinkers such as Ibn Rushd (Avveros), Georg Hegel, Rene Descarte, David Yum.

Imam Gazali`s introduced mysticism and philosophy into the system of Islamic teaching. He used philosophy to strengthen the secular position of Islam. That is why mystic scholars write that mysticism was reconciled with «orthodox» Islam only after the emergence of Gazali`s teachings [2:103].

Through the effects of Imam al-Ghazali`s, the mystical movements of sufism rock to the level of science. At the same time, Ghazali`s called for adherence to the shari'a religious faith, Islamic rituals, while at the same time rejecting the ideas of sufi pantheism. Al-Ghazali's efforts to reconcile mysticism with both the orthodox sunnis, who were in power at the time, and those who were both theoretically and theoretically-organizational, led to a broader dialog and the emergence of consolidated, shari'a-protected developments.

Al-Ash'ari's successor, Imam al-Ghazali`s, who became one of the greatest representatives of the world, ushered in a turning point in the history of mysticism. Major Islamic scholars such as az-Zahabi, al-Suyuti, al-Nawawi and Ibn Asakir recognized him as the restorer of the religion in the fifth century AH. «Islami has been preserved in the true sense of the world», sheikh Hamza Yusuf wrote about al-Ghazali`s. Even in the modern world, Imam al-Ghazali`s is recognized as one of the greatest representatives of Islamic theology.

600 years before the french philosopher Rene Descartes, Imam al-Ghazali`s said, «Doubt is the path to the truth. This is why some scholars who have studied Ghazali`s say that he is the founder of all philosophical skepticism. Ghazali`s «skepticism “ about the possibility of knowing existence clearly expressed his philosophical views. He considered doubt to be the path to the Truth.

Imam al-Ghazali`s introduced mysticism and philosophy into the Islamic system, using philosophy as a means of consolidated Islam. He removed from Sufism the idea of indifference to religious traditions. By neutralizing concepts, he made mysticism a service to the faith.

Regarding the philosophical category of causality, Imam al-Ghazali`s has always held the same view: the cause will be true only if it comes from the will of Allah, not from the development of nature.

Ghazali said that if it would harm them, their families and their children, they should not be left alone. He determined that the sufi's solitude, begging, and renunciation of labor were inappropriate methods, and that these events were a sign of hypocrisy and fraud. His sufi ideas were based, that is he did not want to be an analogies of Allah, but to know Him as a creator and serve Him.

Imam al-Ghazali`s was also the spiritual and ideological teacher of the set of Hamadani, Gizhuani and later Naqshbandi, which is still revered and has millions of followers.

Imam al-Ghazali was a true muslim, jurist, theologian, and mystic who did not hesitate to share his knowledge with others, who did what he said and did, and who did not seek wealth, position, or power. These aspects of the scholar should serve as an example for those who use the religion, which is still common today, only for material gain or politicized from the beginning, seeking power and studying Islam, orthography and secret verses literally for ideological purposes.

Imam al-Ghazali`sexplains the concept of jihad in the Quran in his book al-Wasit fil madhhab (Fundamentals of Islamic fikh, vol.6) interpreted as struggling with «nafsom». He also called the fanatical, religious fanatics of his day “bandits on the great road who attacked people using religion”. Similar bandits are stealing concepts such as “caliphate”, “hijrat“, “jihad”, “martyrdom (shahid)” and “pure islam” from classical Islam today. Against such, we must fight today by propagating pure enlightenedIslam.

Al-Ghazali`s is also the last great philosopher who completed the metaphysical teachings kalam begun by Al-Ash`ari. At the same time, he is a sufi reformer.

The great teacher, sufi, Sheikh Muxyiddin ibn Arabi`s (1165-1240) was born in muslim Andalusia (Spain) in the city of Murcia. Of particular note is Ibn Arabi`s's teaching on interfaith and interfaith relations. Reflecting on the views of the famous German Islamic scholar Annemarie Brigitta Shimmel Ibn Arabi`sy, she considered him to have always been praised as one of the proponents of inter-religious tolerance [3:166].

The number of poems and works of art written by the great Sheikh Ibn Arabi`s is very. Egyptian researcher Osman Yushi lists more than 800 works of the Great scientist. We think this is an exaggeration. According to a list compiled by Ibn Arabi himself, they consist of 290-300 names. [4:24]

All beings, including man, originate from God from the beginning to the end strive for it again. If the whole universe is a macrocosm, then man is microcosm.

Based on Ibn Arabi`s Islamic philosophical views in the current literature , the following conclusions can be drawn: the essence is in Allah. Only the Oneness of this divine substance, the Oneness of the Universe, represents the true reality. The heart (soul) of man and of all mankind must be united around this great, one essence (Allah), and not be given to a mood and creed that contradict unity, consensus.

The great sheikh systematized the doctrine of the unity and oneness of being-«oneness of being» («vahdad ul-vujud»). The teachings put forward in his works were intertwined with the idea of the East and Sufism, so they were great interest by the enlightened scholars engaged in philosophy, theology, and lexicography. Ibn Arabi`s interpretation of the scientific method as an integral like between rationalism (arrow to the mind), scholastics (a powerful divine intuitive inner instinct) and organization of morality and integrity (syncretism).

The great sheikh used the symbols and mythologies of the Qur`an to create a cosmology of mysticism. Arranged and supplemented Sufi views on other matters.

Pantheism corresponds to the Islamic expressions of «existence» and «available».

Ibn Arabi`s said, «The universe, being, including man, is the eternal, eternal side of that one, the oneness of being, and Allah is the inner side. Allah is absolutely free from all attributes. He is the only being of the whole universe, the essence of the Creator.

Another important issue in the study was Ibn al-'Arabi's study that the idea of «wahdat ul wujud» is not pantheism. This has been commented on by several orientalists. We agree. In other words, if pantheism assumes that things are one with God, then the oneness of God is not such, but that God is separate and that the universe is a manifestation of His names and attributes, and that there is no essence. In the absence of «mosivo» (greatest), there is no need to talk about «hulul» (evolution) and intifada (union). There must be more than one being for these to happen.

Authors who are members of influential sects such as Ash-Shoziliya, al-Qadiri, Naqshbandi and Bektashia have left works dedicated to the personality and ideas of Ibn Arabi's. A number of the sheikh's theoretical systems have determined the ideological compatibility of the above and other Sufi sects. His practical advice, which is mentioned in «al-Futuhot al- Makkiya», became a source for the training of murids.

As a result of his systematization work, a real «encyclopedia of Muslim esotericism» was created, which included various aspects of «kalam», «philosophy» and «Muslim tradition». In the cultural of the Muslim religious-mystical world, it is difficult to find any direction or current that is not reflected in the works of the Great Sheikh. In particular, his major work, The Discoveries and Inspirations of Messa (Futuhot al-Makkiya), was multidisciplinary, covering both poetry and grammar, as well as mathematics and the natural scientific views of the time.

It is impossible not to agree with the opinion of the scholars that «Ibn Arabi's summarized, analyzed and systematized the five centuries of mystical traditions»[5:119]. Without adding to his views outside the sphere of Islam, we can say that Ibn Arabi's described the world of Muslim sufis from Al-Hasan al-Basri (eighth century) to his contemporaries (twelfth and thirteenth centuries).

The following views of Ibn Arabi's are also important for understanding and drawing conclusions from the socioreligious-political environment of today. He justified freedom of religion, for which the form of religion did not matter. It is permissible to pray in a mosque, in a church, in a monastery, in a Jewish synagogue, or in front of an idol if the worshiper believes that he is addressing God, «the worshiper imagines Him (God) in the form of Light». Man knows him to be a living being, writes Ibn Arabi's. It is not necessary to follow only one belief, because it leads to a loss of confidence in other things. Everywhere Allah, the Almighty, is not satisfied with just one belief. The Qur'an says that wherever you look, you will see the beauty of Allah. Everyone prays to the one he believes in, his God is in his personal nature, and he praises himself when he prays to Him». Everything, including man, comes from Allah and belongs to Him from the beginning to the end [6:21-22]. If the whole universe is a makrokosm, then man is a microcosm (the universe is sugro) [7:21].

The religious-philosophical, mystical views of Abu Homid al-Gazali's and Ibn Arabi's are, in essence, religious, mystical and moral philosophical teachings. The ontological issues of Allah the universe and man are the main problem in the teachings of Imam al-Gazali and Ibn Arabi, and their acceptance as an idea determines. They developed irrationalist principles along which rational thinking in understanding God and His creatures, and these permeated the social consequences [8:196].

At the same time, Abu Homid al-Gazali's and Ibn Arabi's also considered mysticism to be the most appropriate form of Islamic science and considered it to be the foundation of Islamic philosophy. In conclusion, it should be noted that the issues raised in the teachings of Imam al-Ghazali and Ibn Arabi. Their rich heritage has become a source for many fans to acquire philosophical, philosophical-religious, occult knowledge for centuries. Their mystical views represent religious and ethnic tolerance with their social, spiritual and ideological character.

So, if we want to gain a deeper understanding of the essence of science and scholarship, we need to study in detail the life and work of incomparable scholars such as Imam al-Ghazali's and Ibn al-Arabi's.



## **REFERENCES**

1. Speech of the President of the Republic of Uzbekistan Shavkat Mirziyoyev at the 72nd session of the United Nations General Assembly // «People's Word», September 20, 2017.
2. Hamitjon Homidi. Scholars of Sufism. -T.: “Sharq”, 2004.
3. Jafar Kholmuminov. Interreligios and sectarian relations in the views of Ibn Arabi`s. Scientific and educational journal “Sino”, 2009, Tehran.
4. Ibn Arabi`s. Mekkanskies otkroveniia. Translation A.D. Knsh. St.Petersburg, 1995.
5. Knsh A.D. The Teachings of Ibn Arabiy in the Late Muslim Tradition. -Moscow, 1986.
6. Komilov Najmiddin. “The secret of monotheism”. The second book. 1999.
7. Stepenyants M.T. Philosophical aspects of Sufism. –M., 1987.
8. Pulatov H., Mamatov M. Excerpts from the history of mysticism.–T.:A.Navoi national library of Uzbekistan publishing house, 2011.

## HOUSEHOLD MEMBERS' MIGRATION AND RICE PRODUCTIVITY

Govinda Bahadur K.C.\*; Durga Devkota\*\*; Naba Raj Devkota\*\*\*; Dirgha Jibi Ghimire\*\*\*; Ujjal Tiwari\*\*\*\*

\*Researcher PhD Candidate under  
Agriculture and Forestry University Chitwan, NEPAL

\*\*Professor  
Department head of Rural Sociology and development Studies under Agriculture and Forestry  
University  
Chitwan, NEPAL

\*\*\*Professor  
Vice-Chancellor of Gandaki University Pokhara, NEPAL

\*\*\*\*Professor  
University of Michigan, Ann Arbor, USA

\*\*\*\*\* Assist. Professor  
Department of Agricultural Economics and Agribusiness Management under Agriculture and  
Forestry University  
Chitwan, NEPAL

**DOI:10.5958/2278-4853.2022.00147.1**

---

### ABSTRACT

*Food security in Nepal can be assured by increasing rice production. However, the rate of out-migration has significantly impacted the fluctuations of rice production. Migration has both positive and negative impacts on the agricultural sector of Nepal. This retrospective study analyzed the impact of household members' migration on rice productivity in the Chitwan Valley of Nepal. The multivariate linear regression analysis was used to predict the outcome of independent predictors on the dependent variable. The results showed that migration had a significant contribution to rice productivity ( $b=0.050$ ,  $p<0.05$ ). Similarly, the size of the family, land ownership and use of technology such as irrigation, chemical fertilizers, and thresher/harvester positively contributed to the rice productivity ( $p<0.05$ ). Above all, the study depicts that migration had a positive impact on rice productivity which can be further improved by empowering female household members in decision-making in regards to rice productivity, timely availability of seed, and proper use of technologies.*

**KEYWORDS:** Migration, Rice Production, Agriculture, Technologies.

---

### INTRODUCTION

Sustainable Development Goal (SDG) 2 i.e. “end hunger, achieve food security and improved nutrition, and promote sustainable agriculture” can be achieved through agricultural transformation (UN, 2015). Nepal, a landlocked country in South Asia is challenged to meet this

goal due to declining per capita arable land, limited use and access to advanced technologies as well as other resources (Choudhary et al., 2022).

Rice is the major staple cereal in Nepal with a demand of 4.08 million tons annually (TEPC, 2020). However, the rice yield in Nepal is low in South Asia. In the last decade, rice production was the lowest during 2006/07 and 2009/10 due to early drought and late monsoon rain which late increased during 2013/14 (Poudel, 2021). In 2018, about 5.6 million tons rice was produced annually. Since, the production was not sufficient to meet the demand of the population, Nepal imported 0.75 million tons of milled rice in 2019 (MOALD, 2020). Rice production is carried out on nearly 1.50 million ha in Nepal (MoALD, 2019). According to (Gairhe et al., 2021), the import of rice has increased from 24.48 to 38.11 percent per annum. Agriculture production systems based on rice are widely carried out in the Terai region of Nepal (Subedi et al., 2020). However, due to in- adequate knowledge on the use of resources, the lack of modern technology use have resulted in low yield. Despite the sufficient area for rice productivity, Nepal is unable to meet the demand of the population. The major cause behind this is due to lack of labor resulting from youth out- migration, followed by constraints of credit, subsistence-oriented farming, and insurance (Maharjan, 2013). When the rate of migration is high, only the children and elderly are left out in villages. Young, energetic, and physically capable adults migrate to earn foreign currency (Singh et al., 2015).

Migration is an important livelihood strategy for low- and middle-income countries such as Nepal (Kunwar, 2021). There are several studies depicting the impact of migration on agricultural production. Nepal is an agricultural country and farming is the traditional occupation of Nepalese. However, in the present context, both out-migration and emigration have heightened for better education, employment opportunities, transportation, communication, and easy life (Rigg et al., 2016).

Remittances account for a significant share of overall household income (K. Sapkota, 2017). In the neighboring country India, the remittance-receiving household was found using advanced technologies such as improved varieties of rice and transplanting techniques (Singh et al., 2012). In another study, remittances were commonly used for foods and goods while less used for agricultural purposes (Jaquet et al., 2016). Similar findings were observed in a study conducted in Nepal where a large proportion of remittance was used for consumption purposes while only 5% was used for agriculture purposes (Khanal et al., 2015). Since rice is a major staple food crop, those not having access to rice are considered as not having proper food despite the availability of other food options (Gartaula et al., 2012). Out-migration has resulted in labor shortages, with a major effect on food security and food sovereignty contributing to a vicious cycle with a greater impact on the agriculture sector (Brown, 2020). Evidence of the effect of migration on agriculture productivity in Nepal exists. However, there is scarce information on the impact of migration specifically on rice productivity. Thus, this paper provides insights into the impact of household members' migration on rice productivity.

## METHODOLOGY

The main purpose of this study was to assess the consequences of previous out-migration (migration of 10 years from 2006 to 2015) for recent agricultural activities in the past 2015. The study was carried out in western Chitwan valley. A baseline survey of 3372 households were carried out before the data collection of this study (DFID Agriculture survey, 2015) which was narrowed to 2214 households in the Department for International Development (DFID)

Agriculture survey that was completed in 5 seasons of data collection. Out of the DFID agricultural survey, 1462 (66.6%) rice-producing households of two seasons were selected for this study.

The predictor's values were primarily derived from retrospective data of migration from 2006 to 2015 to reduce the potential for endogeneity with agricultural activities in 2015. So, all control variables used in 6 models were from 2015. The six forms of migration such as number of migrants during last 10 years, total months of migration during last 10 years, number of international male migrants, international female migrants, domestic male migrants and domestic female migrants were used for predicting productivity in the last 12 months in 2015. With using the large number of control variables that account for many household characteristics, un-instrumental measures of migration were also included as predictors to interpret the cause nature of the effect as in the study by (Gray, 2009). The analysis for this study was done through SPSS version 26 in which descriptive statistics such as frequency, mean, and standard deviation were used to analyze the socio- demographic characteristics of the households. Similarly, multivariate linear regression analysis was used to predict the outcome of independent predictors on the dependent variable.

So, this study implemented household and community level data from multiple surveys collected by Chitwan Valley Family Study (CVFS). Various surveys used were household registry (refreshed in every 6 months), Agriculture and Remittance calendar, 2015 (Baseline survey of 10 years) and DFID Agriculture Survey, 2015 (the major source of my survey data). The only one outcome variable productivity of rice was calculated on the basis of conversion of given area kattha into hectare and production kg into ton. The productivity calculated was further improved by power transformation as IDF Normal i.e. Inverse distribution function normal to make the distribution normal. In case of major explanatory variables number of migrants, total months of migration, no. of international male and female migrants and domestic male and female migrants were taken from Agriculture and Remittance Calendar, 2015 (Base line survey of 10 years). These variables were transformed into recode and square root forms so as to increase normal distribution of data. All the number of migrants which were constructed by counting the number of household members living away home during period of ten years. Similarly, total month of migration was obtained counting total months of absentees for each household members during the same period of time. Demographic measures such as male per hectare (idf. Normal) and female per hectare were obtained by dividing number of living male and female above 15 years per hectare to total land owned (farm size). So, the unit of labor power was labor per hectare during analysis of data. Average age (average of age for whole family members above 15 years) and family size both were taken from household registry. Most of the variables under explanatory variables were the characteristics of farm household during 2015 so as to fulfill research objectives.

## RESULTS

**TABLE 1. DESCRIPTIVE STATISTICS OF VARIABLES (N=1462 HOUSEHOLDS)**

Variables	Definition	Descriptive Statistics					
		N	Mean	Std. Deviation	Mini mum	Maxim um	Range
Independent variables							
Number of migrants	Migrants in number In last 10 years	1462	2.57	2.32	0	19	19
Total month of migration	Months of out migration in last 10 years	1462	116.9631	118.53	0.00	1308.00	1308.00
Number of international male migrants	Migrants in number (15 and above)	1462	0.92	0.92	0	6	6
Number of international female migrants	Migrants in number (15 and above)	1462	0.15	0.46	0	6	6
Number of domestic male migrants	Migrants in number (15 and above)	1462	0.74	1.00	0	9	9
Number of domestic female migrants	Migrants in number (15 and above)	1462	0.74	1.01	0	7	7
Dependent variable							
Productivity	Tones per hectare	1462	4.3284	1.56751	0.78	19.10	18.32
Demographic Characteristics							
Number of working age male and female/hec	Labor/hec (living15 and above)	1462	13.12661	18.86	0.925	295.858	294.933
Number of working age male/hec	Male/hec (living15 and above)	1462	5.20991	9.60	0.000	177.515	177.515
Number of working age female/hec	Female/hec (living15 and above)	1462	7.91670	12.32	0.000	236.686	236.686
Average age of household members (15 and above)	Average of age for houshold members in years	1462	36.311	7.61	20.7	77.0	56.3
Family size	Total household members	1462	6.33	2.77	1	20	19
Socio-Economic Characteristics							
Land owned (Farm size)	Hectare	1462	0.4085	0.45	0.00	3.38	3.38
Quality of Cultivated land							
khet Only	1 if Yes, 0 otherwise	1462	0.761	0.43	0.0	1.0	1.0
Bari only	1 if Yes, 0 otherwise	1462	0.157	0.36	0.0	1.0	1.0
Khet_Bari_both_72	1 if Yes, 0 otherwise	1462	0.082	0.27	0.0	1.0	1.0
Number of parcel of cultivated land	Parcels in number	1462	1.58	0.81	1	6	5

**Table 1 Continued**

Variables	Definition	Descriptive Statistics					
		N	Mean	Std. Deviation	Minimum	Maximum	Range
Average of Education	Average of education (15 and above)	1426	7.78	2.79	0	16	16
Livestock ownership	Number of standardized units in LSU	1462	1.69958	1.66	0.000	31.980	31.980
Farm income	Income in Rs.	1462	12104.06	120559.04	0	4006194	4006194
<b>Quality of house</b>							
Single family house	1 if Yes, 0 otherwise	1462	0.9015	0.30	0.00	1.00	1.00
Multi-family house	1 if Yes, 0 otherwise	1462	0.0985	0.30	0.00	1.00	1.00
<b>Ethnicity</b>							
Brahmin/Chhetri	1 if Yes, 0 otherwise	1462	0.4323	0.50	0.00	1.00	1.00
Hill_Janajati	1 if Yes, 0 otherwise	1462	0.1710	0.38	0.00	1.00	1.00
Dalit	1 if Yes, 0 otherwise	1462	0.1265	0.33	0.00	1.00	1.00
Newar	1 if Yes, 0 otherwise	1462	0.0451	0.21	0.00	1.00	1.00
Terai_Janajati	1 if Yes, 0 otherwise	1462	0.2250	0.42	0.00	1.00	1.00
<b>Technology use in Production</b>							
Availability of irrigation (times)	0 to 2 times	1462	1.69	0.53	0	2	2
Pesticides/Herbicides use (times)	0 to 2 times	1462	0.3413	0.54	0.00	2.00	2.00
Chemical fertilizer use (times)	0 to 2 times	1462	1.65	0.59	0	2	2
Vitamins use (times)	0 to 2 times	1462	0.2134	0.45	0.00	2.00	2.00
Tractor use (times)	0 to 2 times	1462	1.0841	0.31	0.00	2.00	2.00
Improved seed use	1 if Yes, 0 otherwise	1462	0.21	0.41	0	1	1
Thresher/Harvester used during production	1 if Yes, 0 otherwise	1462	0.90	0.30	0	1	1
<b>Neighborhood Characteristics</b>							
Proximity to urban center Narayangarh	Distance hours by bus	1462	1.14	0.57	0	4	4

1 hectare = 1.5 bigha =  
30 kattha

The different measures of the migration such as the number of migrants, the total number of migrants, international male migrants, international female migrants, domestic male migrants, and domestic female migrants were the major explanatory variables. The average number of overall household migrants was  $2.57 \pm 2.32$  with a maximum of 19 migrants from an individual household. The average total month of migration was  $116.96 \pm 118.93$  months among the overall household. The maximum migration month was 1308 months from an individual household.



The average number of male international migrants from the overall household was  $0.92 \pm 0.92$  members with a maximum of 6 male members having international migration from an individual household. The average number of female international migrants from the overall household was  $0.15 \pm 0.46$  members with a maximum of 6 female members having international migration from an individual household. The average number of male domestic migrants from the overall household was  $0.74 \pm 1.0$  members to a maximum of 9 male members having domestic migration from an individual household. The average number of female domestic migrants from an overall household was 0.74 members to a maximum of 7 female members having domestic migration from an individual household.

Rice productivity was the main outcome variable for the study analysis. In the research area it was reported that the average rice productivity was 4.32 tons per hector. The overall average number of working-age males and females 15 years and above per hector was 13.12. The average number of working males aged 15 years and above per hector was 5.2. The average number of working females aged 15 years and above per hector was 7.9. The average age of household members 15 years and above was 36.3 years among the household.

The average family size among the household was  $6.33 \pm 2.77$  members. The average size of land owned by the household was  $0.40 \pm 0.45$  hectares. About the quality of cultivated land, 76 percent was Khet, 15 percent Bari and 9 percent both khet and bari. The average number of the parcel of land was  $1.58 \pm 0.81$  among the households. The average educational qualification was  $7.78 \pm 7.97$  completed among the households. The average number of livestock owned by household was  $1.69 \pm 1.66$  standardized livestock unit (LSU).

In case of the house quality, 90 percent of the households were of single family whereas still 10 percent were of multi- family house. For ethnicity, 43 percent were Brahmin/Chhetri, 17 percent Hill janajati, 12 percent Dalit, 4 percent Newar and 22 percent Terai Janajati in the research area. So, the Brahmin/ Chhetri was the dominant group in the area.

Considering the use of technologies, the average irrigation times among the household was  $1.69 \pm 0.53$ . The average use of chemical fertilizer was  $0.21 \pm 0.45$  times. In case of neighborhood characteristics, on an average the accessibility to urban center (Narayangarh) was  $1.14 \pm 0.57$  hours by bus from each household.

**TABLE 2 ESTIMATION EFFECT OF OUT MIGRATION AND STATUS ON RICE PRODUCTIVITY IN CHITWAN, NEPAL**

Variables	Model 1	Model 2	Model 3	Model 4	Model 5	Model 6
Productivity tons/hectare (idf Normal)						
Number of migrants (Recode numbers)	0.050(2.113)**					
Total month of migration (10 years-square root)		0.019(2.178)*				
Numbers of international male migrants (Recoded)			-0.005(-0.105)			

Numbers of international female migrants (Recoded)				0.123(1.291)		
Numbers of Domestic male migrants (Recoded)					0.077(1.6)	
Numbers of Domestic female migrants (Recoded)						0.115(2.386)*
Demographic characteristics						
Number of working age male/hectare (idf normal)	0.012(2.621)**	0.013(2.811)**	0.013(2.705)**	0.013(2.702)	0.012(2.579)**	0.012(2.553)*
Number of working age female/hectare	0.013(3.792)**	0.013(3.787)***	0.014(3.993)***	0.014(3.98)**	0.014(3.938)***	0.013(3.841)**
Average age 15 and above (years)	-0.009(-1.784)*	-0.01(-1.821)*	-0.01(-1.934)*	-0.01(-1.962)**	-0.01(-1.906)*	-0.01(-1.924)*
Family size (Recode numbers)	-0.12(-2.788)**	-0.12(-2.811)**	-0.072(-1.851)**	-0.085(-2.23)**	-0.093(-2.385)**	-0.114(-2.795)**
Socio-economic Characteristics						
Livestock ownership (LSU Recode)	0.031(0.877)	0.03(0.852)	0.027(0.764)	0.029(0.835)	0.029(0.815)	0.029(0.832)
Land_ownership (hectare-idf Normal)	0.328(3.044)**	0.32(2.96)**	0.369(3.453)**	0.352(3.293)*	0.348(3.263)**	0.341(3.201)*
Quality of cultivated land (Ref=Khet and Bari both)						
Khet only (Yes=1)	0.439(2.948)**	0.444(2.98)**	0.443(2.969)**	0.445(2.986)*	0.449(3.016)**	0.437(2.94)**
Bari only (Yes=1)	0.571(3.202)**	0.568(3.185)**	0.571(3.197)**	0.572(3.205)*	0.577(3.235)**	0.574(3.224)*
Average of Education (years)	-0.019(-1.101)	-0.019(-1.136)	-0.021(-1.255)	-0.021(-1.199)	-0.02(-1.163)	-0.02(-1.173)
Number of Parcels of cultivated land (Numbers)	-0.175(-2.779)*	-0.171(-2.709)**	-0.174(-2.748)**	-0.172(-2.716)**	-0.175(-2.772)**	-0.179(-2.837)**

	Farm income (in Rs-1df normal)	0.0000005327(1 1 .262)	0.0000005595(1 .324)	0.0000005101(1 .207)	0.0000005253 (1.243)	0.0000005009(1 .186)	0.0000005174 (1.227)
<b>Quality of house (Ref=Multi family)</b>							
single_family (Yes=1)	-0.053(-0.398)	-0.061(-0.458)	-0.068(-0.505)	-0.069(-0.511)	-0.073(-0.543)	-0.064(-0.476)	
<b>Intercept</b>	3.793(9.105***)	3.755(8.994)***	3.834(9.163)***	3.831(9.197)* **	3.814(9.156)	3.863(9.281)	
<b>Model F</b>	7.926	7.938	7.723	7.798	7.839	7.982	
<b>Regression degree of freedom</b>	25	25	25	25	25	25	
<b>Residual degree of freedom</b>	1398	1398	1398	1398	1398	1398	
<b>Adjusted R Square</b>	10.80%	10.90%	10.60%	10.70%	10.70%	10.90%	
<b>t-static ***=p&lt;0.001; **=p&lt;0.05; *p&lt;0.1</b>		<b>Figure in the parenthesis are B(t) value</b>		<b>1 hectare=1.5 bigha=30 kattha</b>			

**Table 2**  
**continued**

<b>Variables</b>	<b>Model 1</b>	<b>Model 2</b>	<b>Model 3</b>	<b>Model 4</b>	<b>Model 5</b>	<b>Model 6</b>
<b>Productivity tons/hect (1df Normal)</b>						
<b>Ethnicity (Ref=Brahmin/Chhetri)</b>						
Hill_Janajati	-0.254(-2.198)**	-0.246(-2.122)**	-0.267(-2.305)**	-0.268(-2.318)**	-0.25(-2.155)**	-0.244(-2.11)**
Dalit	-0.732(-5.457)***	-0.738(-5.499)***	-0.728(-5.414)***	-0.73(-5.435)***	-0.73(-5.441)***	-0.719(-5.357)***
Newar	0.056(0.291)	0.057(0.294)	0.039(0.203)	0.049(0.253)	0.048(0.251)	0.057(0.298)
Terai_Janajati	-0.454(-4.165)***	-0.451(-4.138)***	-0.472(-4.335)***	-0.467(-4.292)***	-0.459(-4.209)***	-0.452(-4.147)***
<b>Technology use in production</b>						
Availability of irrigation (times)	0.307(4.097)***	0.306(4.088)***	0.306(4.079)***	0.306(4.081)***	0.304(4.056)***	0.306(4.088)***
Chemical fertilizer use (times)	0.141(2.011)**	0.136(1.951)**	0.132(1.887)*	0.135(1.937)*	0.138(1.971)**	0.135(1.937)*
Pesticides/Herbicides use(times)	0.042(0.439)	0.04(0.425)*	0.055(0.577)	0.051(0.542)	0.049(0.515)	0.046(0.489)
Vitamins use (times)	-0.003(-0.028)	0(-0.001)	-0.016(-0.139)	-0.01(-0.087)	-0.014(-0.119)	-0.017(-0.144)
Tractor use (times)	0.177(1.327)	0.178(1.334)	0.18(1.349)	0.18(1.352)	0.182(1.367)	0.172(1.289)
Improved seed use(Yes=1)	-0.05(-0.5)	-0.051(-0.513)	-0.044(-0.441)	-0.046(-0.463)	-0.046(-0.465)	-0.049(-0.491)
Thresher/Harvester use during production (Yes=1)	0.334(2.326)**	0.326(2.27)**	0.335(2.323)**	0.338(2.35)**	0.342(2.376)**	0.338(2.357)**
<b>Neighborhood Characteristics</b>						
Proximity to urban centerNarayangarh (hrs-1df. Normal)	-0.576(-3.093)**	-0.557(-3.007)***	-0.526(-2.831)**	-0.534(-2.884)**	-0.559(-3.006)**	-0.547(-2.959)**

<b>Intercept</b>	3.793(9.105***)	3.755(8.994)***	3.834(9.163)***	3.831(9.197)***	3.814(9.156)	3.863(9.281)
<b>Model F</b>	7.926	7.938	7.723	7.798	7.839	7.982
<b>Regression degree of freedom</b>	25	25	25	25	25	25
<b>Residual degree of freedom</b>	1398	1398	1398	1398	1398	1398
<b>Adjusted R Square</b>	10.80%	10.90%	10.60%	10.70%	10.70%	10.90%
<b>t-static ***=p&lt;0.001; **=p&lt;0.05; *p&lt;0.1</b>		<b>Figure in the parenthesis are B(t) value</b>		<b>1 hectare=1.5 bigha=30 kattha</b>		

Table 2 shows the multiple linear regression analysis from six models with different measures in the prediction indicator regarding household migration. There was a significant increase in the rice productivity with the status of migration in model 1 having increase in 0.050 productivity tons per hector per one member from a household having migration (b=0.050, p<0.05) to that of household having non-migrant. Similarly, from model 2 there was a significant increase in the rice productivity by 0.019 tons per hector having increase in one migration month per individual household (b=0.019, p<0.005). Model 6 shows the positive contribution of domestic female migrants for the increase in rice productivity by 0.115 tons per hector per one female household member having domestic migration (b=0.115, p<0.05). Household migration measures such as international male & female and domestic male out migration in model 3,4 and 5 did not had any significant contribution regarding the increase or decrease in the rice productivity. The overall models support that having out migration throughout the period of time had increment in rice productivity in the past 12 months at Chitwan District of Nepal.

The number of both working age male and female had positive contribution towards increase in the rice productivity as shown in model 1-6 (p<0.05). Similarly, the size of the family had a significant role in contribution for increasing the rice productivity as shown in overall model 1- 6 (p<0.05). Similarly, the household owning a land also had a significant contribution for the increase in rice productivity for overall models tested with different measures of out migration (p<0.05). The household having livestock did not had any significant contribution regarding the rice productivity. The household having either a khet or a bari showed significant contribution in the increment of rice productivity (P<0.05).The household having members with an average age of 15 years and above also had contribution for the increment of rice productivity having all of the coefficients positive throughout the models (p<0.05) model 4.The household having number of parcels of cultivated land had a significant negative effect in the rice productivity from overall models (p<0.05).The distance from household and the land/field had a significant negative effect in the decrease of rice productivity as shown in overall models 1-6(p<0.05).

The household migration having ethnicity such as hill Janajati, Dalit and Terai Janajati had negative effect in decrease of rice productivity compared to the household having Brahmin/ Chhetri group (p<0.05). There was no significant contribution of the Newar group from a household for the increment in rice productivity.

Irrigation availability among the technology used for rice productivity was a strong significant component for contributing in the increment of rice productivity in overall six models (p<0.0001). Use of chemical fertilizer regarding rice productivity had a positive contribution in

the increase of rice productivity ( $p < 0.05$ ). Likewise, use of thresher/harvester during crop production also

positively contributed for the increment in rice productivity ( $p < 0.05$ ).

## **DISCUSSION**

Migration has become an easy pathway for people to seek job opportunities and better life style with benefits of remittances. However, migration has changed the agricultural pattern of the country. This study explored the impact of migration on rice productivity along with other factors.

The result of this study provided evidences that rice productivity was found to be significantly increased among household having migrant workers as compared to non- migrants. However, the finding was contrasted in a nationally representative study which showed that migration negatively affected agriculture yield as remittances were not used for agricultural purpose as well (Tuladhar et al., 2014). It is obvious that migration decreases the labor force for agricultural purposes which in turn reduce the production rate. Moreover, at present people are influenced by western culture which makes them feel farming is outdated occupation carried out by uneducated people. This leads them to use remittances in fulfillment of materialistic aspect rather than advancement in agricultural technologies. However, in this study the rice production was high despite there was migration. The positive contribution despite the migration could be possible because of good practice regarding organic rice farming in Chitwan district as shown by (Sapkota et al., 2021). Further, possible reason could be the active involvement of the female household members in agricultural production, availability of greater land ownership or increase in farm size, or utilization of remittances in technological advancement for rice production.

Gender plays vital role in the agricultural production. In present study, both male and female had a positive contribution in rice production. The finding was supported by (Thapa et al., 2020) in which female workers engaged in unskilled work such as uprooting, weeding while male was involved in land preparation, threshing and others. This finding was contrasted in study by (Medagbe et al., 2020) in which male farmers were more engaged in rice production with high labor time as compared to female farmers. Similarly, positive contribution of male in rice production was observed in study by (Addison et al., 2016). This difference might be due to different country context.

A significant increase in rice productivity was observed among household with greater land ownership or increase in farm size in the research area. Similar findings were presented in study by (Hall et al., 2014). Private land owner had higher rice production as compared to rented land (Untari & Irene Herdjiono, 2020). The size of the family had a significant role in contribution for increasing the rice productivity in present study. This finding was supported by (Sapkota et al., 2021) in which the number of family members had positive and statistically significant effect on the production of rice.

Considering the use of technology, this study depicted that irrigation was a strong predictor to contribute in rice production. Study in Ghana also showed that rice production was more in irrigation farming as compared to rain fed production (Bidzakinetal.,2018). The partial irrigation also showed increased production of rice along with reduction in risk of household rice deficit (Sareth et al., 2020). Further, this study showed that use of chemical fertilizers had positive contribution in rice productivity which was also supported by findings from (Basnet, 2009).

However, another study did not find significant effects of chemical fertilizers on rice productivity

in relation to migration status of household members (Bhandari & Ghimire, 2016).

Present study lacks information about the use of remittances in the field of rice production which could be a future scope in the field of research. Further, findings of this study are based on one part of Terai region of Nepal which raises questions on the generalization to other parts of the country but this research finding provides better generalization opportunities to other South Asian countries having similar living conditions.

## **CONCLUSION**

Agriculture is the traditional occupation of Nepalese society. This study shows that positive contribution of household members' migration towards rice productivity. In addition, Socio demographic factors such as family size, land ownership, gender, and use of irrigation, chemical fertilizers and others also showed positive contribution towards the rice production. It would be better if emphasis is given on promotion of advanced technologies among those with land ownership, training and empowerment of household members particularly females in agricultural sector can boost the rice productivity in Nepal.

## **ACKNOWLEDGMENTS**

The authors would like to acknowledge Prof. Dirga Jibi Gimire, Adrina Gurung and other helping hands of ISER-Nepal. The author alone is responsible for the views expressed in this article and they do not necessarily represent the views, decisions, or policies of the institutions with which they are affiliated.

## **AUTHOR BIOGRAPHIES**

Govinda Bahadur K.C. is a doctoral candidate in Agriculture and Forestry University, Chitwan, Nepal. His/her research interests include social sciences based on agriculture. He is also a senior staff of Pancharatna Group of Poultry industries, Chitwan, Nepal

Address: Bharatpur-5, Chitwan, Nepale-mail:kcgovinda56@gmail.com

## **AUTHOR CONTRIBUTIONS**

Conceptualization, GBKC & Dr. DG; Methodology, GBKC & Dr. DG; Data curation GBKC & Sr. Data Manager AG; Writing, GBKC; Original draft preparation, GBKC; Writing review and Editing GBKC. Along with this all authors have read and agreed to the published version of the manuscript.

**FUNDING:** This research received no external funding.

**CONFLICTS OF INTEREST:** The authors declare no conflict of interest.

## **REFERENCES**

1. Addison, M., Ohene-yankyera, K., & Fredua-antoh, E. (2016). Gender Role, Input Use and Technical Efficiency among Rice Farmers at Ahafo Ano North District in Ashanti Region of Ghana. *Journal of Food Security*, 4(2), 27–35.<https://doi.org/10.12691/jfs-4-2-1>



2. Basnet, B. M.S. (2009). Environment Friendly Technologies for Increasing Rice Productivity. *Journal of Agriculture and Environment*, 9, 34–40. <https://doi.org/10.3126/aej.v9i0.2114>
3. Bhandari, P., & Ghimire, D. (2016). Rural Agricultural Change and Individual Out-migration. *Rural Sociology*, 81(4), 572–600. <https://doi.org/10.1111/ruso.12106>
4. Bidzakin, J. K., Fialor, S. C., Awunyo-Vitor, D., & Yahaya, I. (2018). Impact of Irrigation Ecology on Rice Production Efficiency in Ghana. *Advances in Agriculture*, 2018. <https://doi.org/10.1155/2018/5287138>
5. Brown, E. (2020). Shifting Landscapes: The Effects of Male Out-Migration on Food Security and Food Sovereignty in Rural Nepal. In Independent Study Project (ISP). [https://digitalcollections.sit.edu/cgi/view\\_content.cgi?article=4367&context=isp\\_collection](https://digitalcollections.sit.edu/cgi/view_content.cgi?article=4367&context=isp_collection)
6. Choudhary, D., Banskota, K., Khanal, N. P., McDonald, A. J., Krupnik, T. J., & Erenstein, O. (2022). Rice Subsector Development and Farmer Efficiency in Nepal: Implications for Further Transformation and Food Security. *Frontiers in Sustainable Food Systems*, 5(January), 1–14. <https://doi.org/10.3389/fsufs.2021.740546>
7. Gairhe, S., Gauchan, D., & Timsina, K. P. (2021). Temporal Dynamics of Rice Production and Import in Nepal. *Journal of Nepal Agricultural Research Council*, 7 (April), 97–108. <https://doi.org/10.3126/jnarc.v7i1.36932>
8. Gartaula, H., Niehof, A., & Visser, L. (2012). Shifting perceptions of food security and land in the context of labour out-migration in rural Nepal. *Food Security* 2012 4:2, 4(2), 181–194. <https://doi.org/10.1007/S12571-012-0190-3>
9. Gray, C. L. (2009). Rural out-migration and smallholder agriculture in the southern Ecuadorian Andes. *Population and Environment*, 30 (4–5), 193–217. <https://doi.org/10.1007/S11111-009-0081-5>
10. Hall, M. D. W., Koirala, K. H., Mishra, A. K., & Mohanty, S. (2014). Impact of Land Ownership on Productivity and Efficiency of Rice Farmers: A Simulated Maximum Likelihood Approach. Dept. of Agricultural Economics and Agribusiness Louisiana State University Baton Rouge, LA 70803 E-mail: [kkoiral1@tigers.lsu.edu](mailto:kkoiral1@tigers.lsu.edu) Ashok K. Selected Paper Prepared for Presentation at the Agricultural and Applied Economics Association (AAEA) Annual Meeting, Minneapolis, MN, July 27–29, 2014, 1–19.
11. Jaquet, S., Shrestha, G., Kohler, T., & Schwilch, G. (2016). The Effects of Migration on Livelihoods, Land Management, and Vulnerability to Natural Disasters in the Harpan Watershed in Western Nepal. <https://doi.org/10.1659/MRD-JOURNAL-D-16-00034.1>, 36(4), 494–505. <https://doi.org/10.1659/MRD-JOURNAL-D-16-00034.1>
12. Khanal, U., Alam, K., Khanal, R. C., & Regmi, P. P. (2015). Implications of out-migration in agriculture: A case study of Manapang village, Tanahun, Nepal. *The Journal of Developing Areas*, 49(1), 331–352. <https://www.jstor.org/stable/24241301>
13. Kunwar, L. S. (2021). Foreign Labor Migration Causes and Impacts in Nepal. *Patan Pragya*, 9 (02), 144–154. <https://doi.org/10.3126/pragya.v9i02.42056>
14. Maharjan, A. (2013). Migration for labour and its impact on farm production in Nepal. In

Centre for the Study of Labour and Mobility.

15. Medagbe, F. M. K., Komatsu, S., Mujawamariya, G., & Saito, K. (2020). Men and Women in Rice Farming in Africa: A Cross-Country Investigation of Labor and Its Determinants. *Frontiers in Sustainable Food Systems*, 4, 117. <https://doi.org/10.3389/FSUFS.2020.00117/BIBTEX>
16. MoALD. (2019). Statistics of Nepalese Agriculture. Ministry of Agriculture and Livestock.
17. MOALD. (2020). Statistical Information in Nepalese Agriculture. In Ministry of Agriculture and Livestock. <https://nepalindata.com/resource/statistical-information-nepalese-agriculture-207374-201617/>
18. Poudel, U. (2021). Economic analysis of rice (*Oryza sativa* L.) cultivation in Gorkha district of Nepal. *Act a Scientific Agriculture*, 6(4), 489–497.
19. Rigg, J., Salamanca, A., & Thompson, E. C. (2016). The puzzle of East and Southeast Asia's persistent small holder. *Journal of Rural Studies*, 43, 118–133. <https://doi.org/10.1016/J.JRURSTUD.2015.11.003>
20. Sapkota, B. K., Subedi, A. P., Tripathi, K. M., Dhakal, S. C., & Shrestha, J. (2021). Rice production in Chitwan district of Nepal: An analysis from economic and environmental perspectives. *Journal of Agriculture and Natural Resources*, 4 (1), 50–61. <https://doi.org/10.3126/janr.v4i1.33203>
21. Sapkota, K. (2017). Seasonal Labour Migration And Livelihood In The Middle Hill Of Nepal: Reflections From Arghakhanchi District- Kanhaiya Sapkota 5. *Research Nepal Journal Of Development Studies*, 1(1), 42–57.
22. Sareth, C., Cramb, R., & Fukai, S. (2020). The role of irrigation in the commercialization of rice farming in Southern Cambodia. *White Gold: The Commercialization of Rice Farming in the Lower Mekong Basin*, 261–289. [https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-15-0998-8\\_13/TABLES/11](https://doi.org/10.1007/978-981-15-0998-8_13/TABLES/11)
23. Singh, K. M., Singh, R. K. P., Kumar, A., Kumar, A., Meena, M. S., & Chahal, V. P. (2015). Implications of labour migration for rice production and household economy: Evidences from eastern India. *Indian Journal of Agricultural Sciences*, 85(6), 768–772.
24. Singh, R. K. P., Singh, K. M., & Jha, A. K. (2012). Effect of Migration on Agricultural Productivity and Women Empowerment in Bihar. *SSRNET electronic Journal*. <https://doi.org/10.2139/ssrn.2111155>
25. Subedi, S., Ghimire, Y. N., Kharel, M., Adhikari, S. P., Shrestha, J., & Sapkota, B. K. (2020). Technical efficiency of rice production in terai district of Nepal. *Journal of Agriculture and Natural Resources*, 3(2), 32–44. <https://doi.org/10.3126/janr.v3i2.32301>
26. TEPC. (2020). Trade and Export Promotion Centre. Ministry of Industry Commerce and Supply.
27. Thapa, S., Jamkatel, D.P., Bharati, S., & Bam, S. (2020). Survey on gender role in rice production by farmers of Nuwakot district, Nepal. *Archives of Agriculture and Environmental Science*, 5 (2), 164–167. <https://doi.org/10.26832/24566632.2020.0502012>

- 28.** Tuladhar, R., Sapkota, C., & Adhikari, N. (2014). Effects of Migration and RemittanceIncome on Nepal's Agriculture Yield (Issue27). [www.adb.org](http://www.adb.org)
- 29.** UN. (2015). Transforming our world: the 2030 Agenda for Sustainable Development. United Nations. <https://sdgs.un.org/2030agenda>
- 30.** Untari,U., & Irene Herdjiono, M.V. (2020). LAND OWNING PATTERNS ON RICE FARMING: Increasing Production and Efficiency. Jurnal Ilmiah Pertanian, 16(2), 118–115.<https://doi.org/10.31849/jip>

## MILITARY CULTURE IN THE ACTIVITIES OF ZAHIRIDDIN MUHAMMAD BABUR

**Javohir Shuhratog'li Rizakulov\*; Fakhriyor Akromjonog'li Bakhtiyorov\*\***

\*(Supervisor: DSc, Acting Professor S.A. Hashimova),  
Cadet of the University of Public Security of the Republic of UZBEKISTAN  
Email id: sabohat15@mail.ru

\*(Supervisor: DSc, Acting Professor S.A. Hashimova),  
Cadet of the University of Public Security of the Republic of UZBEKISTAN  
Email id: sabohat15@mail.ru

**DOI: 10.5958/2278-4853.2022.00150.1**

---

### ABSTRACT

*We devoted the article to the analysis of a military culture in the activities of Zahiriddin Muhammad Babur, one of the great representatives of the Uzbek classical literature of the XVI century. They reflected his arduous life and conflicting worldviews in his literary and scientific heritage. Military rhetoric means fighting, shouting and calling. Public speaking and military activities are inextricably linked. The key to something directly related to any success to public speaking skills.*

**KEYWORDS:** *Creativity, Historical Memories, Poetry, Aruz, Lyrical Genres, Rubai, Ghazal, Emotion, Humanity, Morality, Devotion, Love.*

---

### INTRODUCTION

The history of the Uzbek people goes back centuries, so one of the most important tasks today is to restore the moral and spiritual values and change the heritage of great ancestors and thinkers. The immortal creativity of the advanced thinkers has made an invaluable contribution to world science and civilization, among which it rightfully occupies a special place. Zahirad-din Muhammad Babur is a great Uzbek poet, thinker, historian and statesman, founder of the Baburi dynasty and empire.

Babur was born on February 14, 1483, in Andijan, the capital of Fergana. His father, Umar Shaykhmirzo II, the ruler of Fergana, was a descendant of the Emir. He died and was buried in Agra on December 26, 1530. Zahiriddin Muhammad Babur is one of the great figures of 16th-century Uzbek classical literature. His arduous life and conflicting worldviews are reflected in his literary and scientific heritage. Military rhetoric, in essence, means fighting, shouting and calling. That is why the famous Roman orator Mark Tully Cicero said, "In history, one must be either a good military commander or an orator." It is clear that he came to this conclusion after observing and realizing. Public speaking and military activities are inextricably linked. The key to any success is directly related to public speaking skills.

It is no coincidence that Sahibkiran Amir Temur also recognized and practiced the special role of oratory in martial arts and the system of government. The key to victory in battle is self-confidence as well as words. If the commander gives the army a spirit of confidence through his speech, he will act boldly and win, otherwise, he will be defeated. That is why the essence of

public speaking is the art of persuasion. "Temur's rules" can be considered a unique example of the art of speech. The next generation of Temurids, Zahiriddin Muhammad Babur, heard and knew that Amir Temur had not only martial arts and management skills but also his own words, speech and preaching skills. "... let everyone have their own word, let them know what they are doing, that is, let the king of the people say what he says, what he does ..." The inscriptions in "Temur's Statutes" also indicate that the rank of oratory was high at that time.

In 1527, Babur's pre-war situation in India with Rano Sango led to suffering. Conflict and disunity begin among the unruly warriors. Babur then delivers a lively, moving speech to the army.

Gulbadanbegim cites the fact that "everyone in the assembly agrees to this ... and swears that we will fight until we have a drop of blood in our veins ..." it is the evening of the end of the world, it is better to die with a good horse than to be resurrected with a bad horse. God has bestowed this kind of happiness on us and has turned the world into a world for us. A dead martyr and a murderer, I have to swear by the word of God that no one will burn this murderer's face without imagining that this war and persecution will not take place until he loses his life ... "

After Bobur's fiery, warlike speech, all the soldiers came together in battle.

Napoleon Bonaparte used to say to an army ready to fight: "Everyone can die in battle. Only brave and courageous warriors will survive. I need you alive, not dead. So I tell you all not to die, go ahead! " he exclaimed.

An example of Bobur's eloquence is this. He also used the opportunities of rhetorical art to strengthen the policy of statehood in India, to turn the country, which was divided into small feudal, and racial, into a single state, and unite the provinces into a central kingdom. Against the background of traditional rhetorical appeals used in our literary heritage, such as Allah, O Lord, falak, saqi, muganni, sabo, ashiq, mashuqa, agyar, Babur Mirza misses the country, calls for knowledge, war the call also absorbed the content of the call against the opponent. With the role of speech in war and peace, Babur's life and work are examples of this. When the realization of strategic goals depends on the tactics of language use, Babur's views are likely to have a social significance.

## REFERENCES

1. Bobur. Boburnoma. - T. 2007.
2. Gulbadanbegim. Humoyunnoma. - T. 1998.
3. Mallayev N. O'zbek adabiyoti tarixi. - T. , 1976.
4. Nuritdinov M. Boburiylar sulolasi. - T. 1994.
5. Sotimov G'. Boburiyodalar. - T. 2003.
6. Hoshimov I. Hindistonda boburiylar sulolasi saltanati. - T. 1996.
7. Qodirov P. Yulduzli tunlar. - T. 1990.

## TYPES AND STAGES OF SPECIAL MOVEMENTS OF MODERN ARMIES TODAY

**Mirzobek Boltayev\***

\*(Supervisor: DSc, Acting Professor S.A. Hashimova),  
Cadet of the University of Public Security of the Republic of UZBEKISTAN  
Email id: sabohat15@mail.ru

**DOI: 10.5958/2278-4853.2022.00149.5**

---

### ABSTRACT

*This article summarizes the rapid growth of the military sector in the world and describes the correct distribution of the types and stages of special operations in the military field and ways to overcome the negative situation.*

**KEYWORDS:** *Special Forces Operations, Armed Conflict, Military Conflict, Illegal Armed Structures, Military Security, Intelligence.*

---

### INTRODUCTION

Extremism and international terrorism are on the rise, and even some developed countries are creating, arming, and secretly or openly supporting illegal armed structures as international terrorists, freedom fighters, and the opposition in various regions in pursuit of their geopolitical goals. Training of the armed forces to combat illegal armed formations is emerging as one of the most pressing issues today when support cases are on the rise. In order to analyze the military-political situation in the world, in our region, the specifics of modern armed conflicts and threats to the independence of our state, the peace and tranquility of our people and to act in accordance with these threats, in January 2018 Uzbekistan The Defense Doctrine of the Republic was adopted. The Doctrine defines such concepts as "illegal armed formations", "military conflict", "armed conflict", the free interpretation of the universally recognized principles and norms of international law, as well as the specific features of the military-political situation. It was noted that the situation in Central Asia is being negatively affected by the persistence of terrorism, extremism, drug trafficking and cross-border crime, as well as the main threats to national security in the military sphere. Threats to national security in the military sphere are the factors that characterize the possibility of using military force against the Republic of Uzbekistan. Illegal armed groups are armed associations, detachments, and groups formed in violation of national and international law for terrorist, extremist, criminal or other purposes. In many cases, illegal armed groups are sent to various parts of the world to carry out important tasks after undergoing training to carry out intelligence and terrorist activities in training camps located in the territory of some troubled countries. They fight mainly in small, lightly armed groups. Often people who are not self-sacrificing join the organization. As a result, various conflicts arise and lead to serious consequences. Armed conflict is a limited armed conflict between states (international armed conflict) or within the territory of one state (internal armed conflict) aimed at resolving economic, political, national, ethnic, religious and other conflicts (action, quarrel), in which case a state of war is not declared. A military conflict is a form of military inter-state or inter-state conflict that involves all types of armed struggle, including wars and armed conflicts. The tactics of defensive warfare have undergone significant changes in the military conflicts of the second



half of the twentieth century. For example, the defenses of the first half of the Korean War of 1950-1953 were characterized by poor engineering equipment, manifested only by the excavation of incomplete profile trenches in trenches, cells, and some areas. The protection of national interests from threats to national security in the military sphere Armed conflicts in Afghanistan, the Caucasus, the Middle East and many other regions, as well as hostilities against militant groups The complexity of the unit, proved with its bitter experience that special training was required, and high professional training was required from the military. As a result, the efforts of the country's armed forces to combat illegal armed formations have become a separate type of combat, and the study of it and the training of units to perform combat missions are becoming increasingly important. That is why today the special forces of the army have become a type of combat that requires special attention in the training of units. Special military operations are new forms and methods of tactical actions of general military units to combat the armed structures of international terrorist and extremist organizations in armed conflict. The special actions of the troops are aimed at the destruction of illegal armed formations, in cooperation with the special forces of the armed forces, units of the National Guard, and the military structures and bodies of the MIA and DXX., which is a set of goal-oriented actions agreed upon in terms of time and tactical action. This means building a strong unit by separating each unit from the combat units. The aim is to bring together different armed forces in each area and create a large force, as well as to solve a problem without the knowledge of one and the understanding of the other. The special forces of the army, through the organized actions of all the units, divisions, units, and bodies involved in it, can destroy tanks, infantry fighting vehicles (armored personnel carriers), artillery, air defense, aircraft, helicopters, other equipment and weapons. lash. The special actions of the troops are characterized by their sharpness, quickness, rapid change of situation, lack of clear lines of combat and security zones (districts), the constant threat of the enemy to suddenly attack from any direction, and military characterized by strong moral-spiritual and physical influences on the servants. Success in special operations is the high combat readiness of units, physical training, high moral and spiritual training of personnel, a clear understanding of the order and conditions of the combat mission, as well as all participating units, units and divisions, as well as is achieved through the coordinated and organic cooperation of the armed forces. The is carried out in two stages, with a defensive phase in the prevention of armed conflict and an offensive phase in the elimination phase. may independently perform combat missions in strengthening the protection of borders or encircling inland areas, guarding and defending important state (military) facilities and communications, and conducting reconnaissance and reconnaissance operations; moves as part of a motorized platoon (platoon tactical group). Efforts to strengthen state or administrative (encirclement of the internal territory) borders to prevent illegal armed structures from crossing the border (breaking through) and crossing (breaking into) the border or the cessation and siege of militant groups (internal destructive forces) identified in the country, as well as the creation of conditions for their subsequent destruction. forces and means may be allocated for reinforcement, the creation of barricades and reserves, and the installation of guard posts, checkpoints and checkpoints. Depending on the situation, they may be assigned units ranging from a reinforced combat group to a reinforced motorized infantry platoon. Efforts to protect and defend important state (military) facilities and communications involve measures taken by the enemy to capture them or to carry out subversive and terrorist attacks against them. Forces and means may be allocated from general military units to serve in guards, mobile patrols, to set up guard posts, secret services and checkpoints, and, if necessary, to monitor motor convoys. - Search operations to

determine the location of enemy armed forces, their combat composition, the availability of main, reserve and temporary bases, warehouses (hidden areas), control and communication points, and, if convenient, to destroy them in order to do. These tasks are usually carried out by special or intelligence units, and in some cases by intelligence teams from well-trained general units. That is why today the special forces of the army have become a type of combat that requires special attention in the training of units. Special military operations are new forms and methods of tactical actions of general military units to combat the armed structures of international terrorist and extremist organizations in armed conflict. The special actions of the troops are aimed at the destruction of illegal armed formations, in cooperation with the special forces of the armed forces, units of the National Guard, and the military structures and bodies of the MIA and DXX., which is a set of goal-oriented actions agreed upon in terms of time and tactical action. This means building a strong unit by separating each unit from the combat units. The aim is to bring together different armed forces in each area and create a large force, as well as to solve a problem without the knowledge of one and the understanding of the other. The special forces of the army, through the organized actions of all the units, divisions, units, and bodies involved in it, can destroy tanks, infantry fighting vehicles (armored personnel carriers), artillery, air defense, aircraft, helicopters, other equipment and weapons. lash. The special actions of the troops are characterized by their sharpness, quickness, rapid change of situation, lack of clear lines of combat and security zones (districts), the constant threat of the enemy to suddenly attack from any direction, and military characterized by strong moral-spiritual and physical influences on the servants. Success in special operations is the high combat readiness of units, physical training, high moral and spiritual training of personnel, a clear understanding of the order and conditions of the combat mission, as well as all participating units, units and divisions, as well as is achieved through the coordinated and organic cooperation of the armed forces. The is carried out in two stages, with a defensive phase in the prevention of armed conflict and an offensive phase in the elimination phase. may independently perform combat missions in strengthening the protection of borders or encircling inland areas, guarding and defending important state (military) facilities and communications, and conducting reconnaissance and reconnaissance operations; moves as part of a motorized platoon (platoon tactical group). Efforts to strengthen state or administrative (encirclement of the internal territory) borders to prevent illegal armed structures from crossing the border (breaking through) and crossing (breaking into) the border or the cessation and siege of militant groups (internal destructive forces) identified in the country, as well as the creation of conditions for their subsequent destruction. forces and means may be allocated for reinforcement, the creation of barricades and reserves, and the installation of guard posts, checkpoints and checkpoints. Depending on the situation, they may be assigned units ranging from a reinforced combat group to a reinforced motorized infantry platoon. Efforts to protect and defend important state (military) facilities and communications involve measures taken by the enemy to capture them or to carry out subversive and terrorist attacks against them. Forces and means may be allocated from general military units to serve in guards, mobile patrols, to set up guard posts, secret services and checkpoints, and, if necessary, to monitor motor convoys. - Search operations to determine the location of enemy armed forces, their combat composition, the availability of main, reserve and temporary bases, warehouses (hidden areas), control and communication points, and, if convenient, to destroy them in order to do. These tasks are usually carried out by special or intelligence units, and in some cases by intelligence teams from well-trained general units.

## **REFERENCES**

1. Dadaboyev X.V. Umumiy taktika. (Guruh, seksiya, tank). Darslik. – T.: O‘zbekiston Respublikasi Milliy gvardiyasi Harbiy-texnik instituti, 2019.–358 bet.
2. Murodov B.M. Taktik tayyorgarlik. Darslik. (I-qism) – T.: O‘zbekiston Respublikasi Milliy gvardiyasi Harbiy-texnik instituti, 2018.–310 bet.
3. Mirzajonov G‘.T. Azizov R.M. Saidvaliyev R.U. Sharipov A.A. Taktik tayyorgarlik. Darslik. (II-qism) – T.: O‘zbekiston Respublikasi Milliy gvardiyasi Harbiy-texnik instituti, 2018.–380 bet.

## 4C'S OF GREEN MARKETING

**Dr. Suvasis Saha\***

\*Professor,  
Department of Business Management,  
University of Calcutta, INDIA  
Email id: dr.suvasis123@gmail.com

**DOI: 10.5958/2278-4853.2022.00148.3**

---

### ABSTRACT

*The second largest consumer market has to produce not only for itself but mesh up with the world order and this was the reason why the Pre-Mughal and Mughal India had been successful in terms of economic power including the Chola Period also where in we find that on the front of international trade we were the front runners. The present Union Foreign Minister considered in the asian part as the most successful has given the concept of 4Cs' namely the commerce, connectivity, capacity expansion and contact as the navigational bends for meeting the domestic as well as the international demand for economic growth. This calls for international trade being part of 'outside in' in the economic policy of India. Therefore the author has embarked on it with a focus on 'Green' as this is part of inner strength of India meeting the proper use of 3Ps' namely People, Planet and Profit.)*

**KEYWORDS:** Trend Setter, Rational Buyers, Default Green, Net Workers, Value Innovation, Green Wash, Mint Green, Netizen, Deep Purpose Syndrome.

---

### INTRODUCTION

In 2021, India exported \$16 billion maybe a fraction of a percent of global trade but double the level of 2018, while the government's target of \$110 billion in four years seems ambitious, a multifold increase from current levels is likely. It has to have a different product mix that is value oriented agricultural and mechanical /electronic production (not mere assembly) and not volume oriented. It is true that the increase of 2021 was for electronics, bulk low end chemicals, textiles and apparels all quantity oriented and less value oriented. The pathway of the change is to brand slowly a country as Green destination in the production offering. It may look ambitious but the goals are often so. The business of green production assimilation of land, labour, capital and organisation. Here in, the concept of land is the asset that once this mapped on green is not the physical land but more than that this is the knowledge that goes in the green; the default green is not the land. There are states in India which owing to its remoteness and the landscape including higher altitudes claim to be green, but this is an example of **default<sup>3</sup> green**, one has to bear the this is exogenous by nature and fall in the mass category, **therefore green certification is normally not possible**. These mass defaults are useful when the firm cannot, or does not want to invest time and the financial means yet the consumer reaps the benefit. The domestic trade of Green or International trade of Green refers to planned steps of opting for green, which could mean consumer consummating the product and services following certain pattern of production and delivery using the concept of

Green and the upward supply chain being 'Green' and downward supply chain also being green then only will the commerce develop as opposed to the present customerized<sup>4</sup> marketing.

### **Commerce for the Green**

The global green technology and sustainability market size was valued at \$ 10.32 billion in 2020 and is projected to reach \$ 74.64 billion by 2030, growing at a CAGR of 21.9% from 2021 to

2030<sup>5</sup> therefore many national governments are investing heavily in green business and encouraging the private sector including the agricultural to go green. The World Bank's new approach is called Green, Resilient and Inclusive Development, or GRID which is developing Srilanka<sup>6</sup>. Srilanka opted to become the first country to adopt organic farming. Sikkim in India became the first state to become organic. In April, President Rajapaksa announced that only organic farming would be allowed in Sri Lanka, aiming to become the first country to do so<sup>7</sup>. In reference to India one could observe that Sikkim is the first state in the world to become completely organic according to Anbalagan, CEO, and Organic Mission.

In India what is this green business volume like? Indirect reference to green business volume is that India is world's third largest consumer market. Therefore, it need be stated that despite concerted efforts and huge growth potential one has to go by just his gut feel, India's 'Green Market' remains in nascent stage<sup>8</sup>.

Green industry's exact potential in terms of consumer market in India is difficult to estimate owing to consumer perception and preferences. Indian consumers tend to purchase goods and services that are made or are highly dependent on inorganic substances and processes, besides being pollutant in terms of emissions, the moot reasons are:

- 1) They are constrained by the large cost of environmentally sustainable products.
- 2) There is lack of an enabling environment to create better access to green products.
- 3) An overall dearth of information about existence of green product and services. The awareness itself is very narrow.
- 4) Presence of more of Green Wash product and Services and therefore, lack in confidence on the claims of the vendor.

In September 2021, UNEP launched the India Green University Network to provide higher educational institutions a common platform to collaborate. The Network aims to help students build green and environmental sustainability skills through education<sup>9</sup>. One has to understand that the students who are being referred are those of present millennium the generic consumer segments need to be understood if the communication has to be impactful.

### **Generic Segments and the Market Focus**

Whichever Industry comes up the market is the focal point since it is market that needs to be accessed. Therefore, one needs to study the market. The market is addressing the need of the consumer and the generic groups that are classified into three. Based on the values that are sought by customers, the customers could be grouped into the following three segments: a) Trend Setters, b) Rational Buyers and c) Net Workers<sup>10</sup>.

**TABLE: THREE GENERIC SEGMENTS**

<b>Trend Setters</b>	<b>Rational Buyers</b>	<b>Net Workers</b>
a) State –of-the artProduct b) Speed to themarket. c) Re-invent theindustry. d) Get different	a) Re-engineering b) Bench marking c) Cost-cutting d) Excellent services	a) Nurture a culture of commitment and trust. b) Market focus. c) Customization. d) Build relationship.

The generation it will address is largely the 'Net Workers' or some who nurture a culture of commitment and trust; understand value in their own terms with urge to solve finding a customer within a customer and building a community which is more reliable than family or peers. Kotler has referred them as 'Netizen'. It is namely the Generation Z<sup>11</sup>, this is the generation born between 1995-2010. This is the generation that shows a consumption pattern of **uniqueness, unlimited options** and being **ethical** in their choices quite contrary to the early generation of 'Y' that focused on 'Experiences', 'Festivals' and 'Flagship' choices. Since generation 'Z' is ethical they have considerable faith in digging and truth and quickly unfollow the path of 'Y'. Green marketing here-in can chip in with this concept of green as the individual survival, good health and financial wellbeing is being questioned by the post corona phenomena. Green marketing is normally 'Normative' as it does not believe in individual taste and well being it believes in group well being. The market focus is on the delivering the certified green products at affordable cost, selectively following the mantra of 'Value Innovation'<sup>12</sup>.

### **Market Focus**

This 'Value Innovation' is to be meshed in the concept of 'Make in India' in reference to 'Green Product'. 'Make in India' is a programme which is a concept of the present Prime Minister of India, Hon'ble Narendra Modi conceived in 2014 as a strategic shift in the economic and development of India. The policy approach to create a conducive environment for investment develops a modern and efficient infrastructure, and open up new sectors for foreign capital. The initiative targeted 25 economic sectors for job creation and skill enhancement.

"Make in India" had three stated objectives<sup>13</sup>:

1. To increase the manufacturing sector's growth rate to 12-14% per annum;
2. To create 100 million additional manufacturing jobs in the economy by 2022;
3. To ensure that the manufacturing sector's contribution to GDP is increased to 25% by 2022 (later revised to 2025)

The Green Business has to focus in case of India on the following 'Consumer and Application Oriented Market' segments in the 25 sectors.

1. Soil Condition/Moisture monitoring
2. Water Purification



3. Forest Monitoring
4. Air and Water Pollution Monitoring
5. Carbon Footprint Management
6. Green Building
7. Crop Monitoring
8. Fast Moving Consumer Goods
9. Durable Consumer Goods.

### **Green Products**

Five mega trends are dominating business and brand marketing post in the social media age and the post pandemic Corona: purpose, safety, transparency, equality and sustainability<sup>14</sup>. Present day the world is experiencing ' Deep Purpose Syndrome'<sup>15</sup> According to the Deep Purpose objective as stated by Ranjay Gulati of Harvard Business School it is not a statement merely, rather it an operating system that emanates from a purpose statement and operates as a compass for the organisation this indicates that an organization should not only look it from the viewpoint of the consumers but from the viewpoint of the stakeholders. Green Products addresses this problem through its definition of sustainability of upward and downward supply chain. The characteristics of the Green Product<sup>16</sup> are being elaborated for the benefit of the readers.

According to Ellington, Hailes and Makower, the following are the characteristics of green product:

- Are not dangerous to people or animals.
- Do not damage the environment in manufacture, use or disposal.
- Do not consume a disproportionate amount of energy in manufacture, use or disposal.
- Do not cause unnecessary waste.
- Do not involve unnecessary cruelty to animals.
- Do not use materials from threatened species or environment.

A market focus remains incomplete unless we segment the market based on their interest towards green. The segmentation bases are psychographic largely. Since Indian market of very high population load in the Bottom of the Pyramid (BOP)<sup>17</sup>. Two third of the Indian population sponsor the phenomenon.

BOP recasts poverty as an economic opportunity for MNCs. The whole concept is based on three premises: (1) the world's poor constitute massive growth opportunities and profit potential for MNCs, (2) MNCs should play a leading role in unlocking the economic potential of such difficult-to-access markets, and (3) bringing the poor into the global economy will simultaneously generate fortunes for MNCs while solving the problem of global poverty. Critics of BOP approach, note two crucial challenges, governance and sustainability neither challenge is currently well addressed. The interest of the Green is therefore very important way to access this market of the Generation Millennium and Z.

Based on psychographic and behavioural it is four namely, Resource Conserver, Health Fanatics, Animal Lovers, and Outdoor Enthusiasts. In depth tabulation of the four will be helpful for the readers.

**TABLE: SEGMENTING BY GREEN INTEREST IN DEPTH<sup>18</sup>.**

Resource Conserver	Health Fanatics	Animal Lovers	Outdoor Enthusiasts
<b>Likely belong to:</b>	<b>Likely belong to:</b>	<b>Likely belong to:</b>	<b>Likely belong to:</b>
American Rivers	Beyond Pesticide	Wild Life Conservation Society	Sierra Club
Green America	Organic Consumers Associations	Defenders of Wild Life	Surf rider Foundation
Center for the new American Dream	Slow Food	People for Ethical Treatment of Animals	American Hiking Society
<b>Likely Environmental Behaviour</b>	<b>Likely Environmental Behaviour</b>	<b>Likely Environmental Behaviour</b>	<b>Likely Environmental Behaviour</b>
Conserve Energy, Water	Buy Organic Food(s)	Vegetarian/Vegan	Use durable, reusable

Resource Conserver	Health Fanatics	Animal Lovers	Outdoor Enthusiasts
<b>Likely belong to:</b>	<b>Likely belong to:</b>	<b>Likely belong to:</b>	<b>Likely belong to:</b>
American Rivers	Beyond Pesticide	Wild Life Conservation Society	Sierra Club
Green America	Organic Consumers Associations	Defenders of Wild Life	Surf rider Foundation
Center for the new American Dream	Slow Food	People for Ethical Treatment of Animals	American Hiking Society
<b>Likely Environmental Behaviour</b>	<b>Likely Environmental Behaviour</b>	<b>Likely Environmental Behaviour</b>	<b>Likely Environmental Behaviour</b>
Conserve Energy, Water	Buy Organic Food(s)	Vegetarian/Vegan	Use durable, reusable

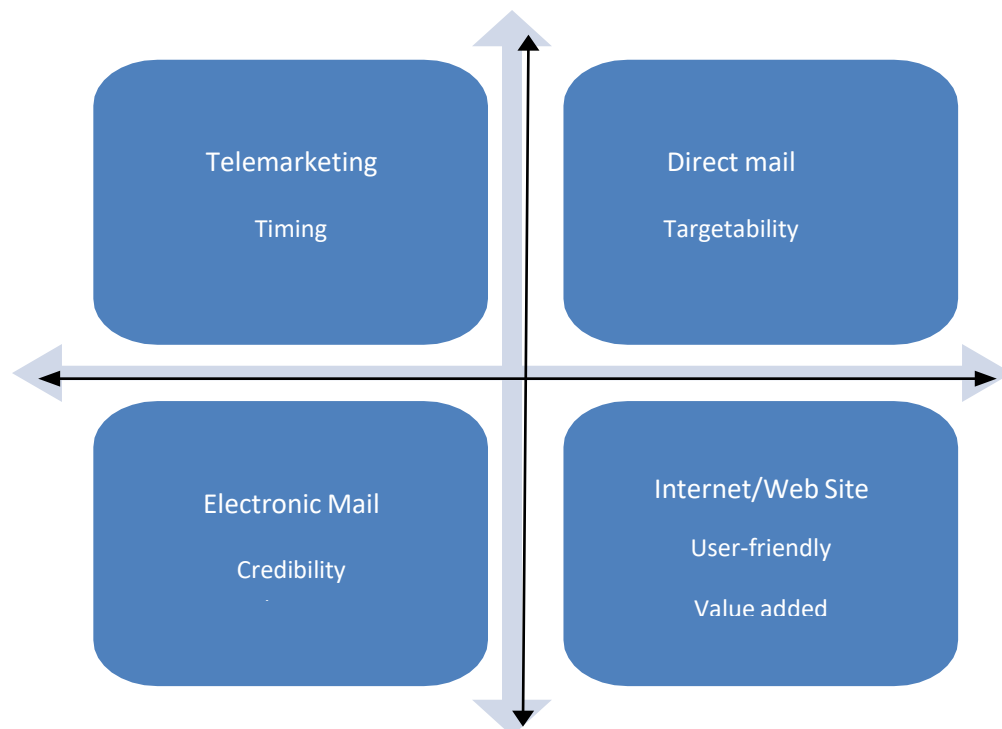
Chart: Modified J.Ottman Consulting .Inc.

### **Connectivity for the Green**

Let us consider the relevant group which here is the Millennium and the Generation 'Z'. They constitute 1/3 rd of the Indian population<sup>19</sup> and depict more direct approach and believe in approaches of disintermediation<sup>20</sup> i.e., going click and click some do not get satisfied and go for re-intermediation<sup>21</sup> and brick is brought it i.e. click and brick or vice-versa.

### **Key to Successful Direct Marketing Channel**

Trad-digital marketing



### Digital Marketing

Source: Modified from Direct Marketing In Action, Edited by Thomas et al pp134<sup>22</sup>

The researcher is more bothered about the bottom two the Electronic Mail and the Internet/Web site since radical trust is the 'in-thing' in 'B to C' and even 'C to B'. Let us delve a bit into these two. Using e-mail means creating credibility and relevance. Credibility can be derived simply by

1) Simply identifying the institution and 2) Sending the mail out irrespective of the size of the mail since individuals or group hate the 'spam'. Recipient in digital marketing want identification and trust worthiness of the communication. Secondly, it is imperative that the firm's offer be clear, obvious and explicit to have an unique customer response (UCR).

Again in internet the social media network has become strong and the facebook pages are twitters and you-tubes have brought in focussed communications and interactive human centric discussions which are significant for the micro-market and finding a customer within a customer. The preliminary form of discovering a customer within a customer is the appearance of 'Permission Marketing'. It helps both the consumer and the marketers in a symbiotic exchange. This has been stated in the book, Permission Marketing by Seth Godin. Marketing is anticipated, personal and relevant<sup>23</sup>. through the OTT (over- the- top) since one can now seek his communication not on bench-viewing and at his discretion carrying the mobile and viewing or recalling the view this is one form of permission marketing. The platform of 'Amazon-Prime' gives one the liberty and the streaming quality is also good. On the internet through Podcast, and via the text messages, markets are getting more connected and becoming more vocal every day. The marketer and the consumer is interacting and has made the term 'market' a verb.

### **Optimize Social Media For Cause Of Green**

There are most probably arrays of at least more than 50 popular social websites. To refer a few that are at top of mind recall are, 'Pinterest', 'Twitter', 'Facebook', 'Instagram', 'Google+' and 'Linked in'. The field of Green Marketing as stated above is normative yet the imperative of time states that the population to be addressed to develop the Green Products and Green Services is the generation which is 'Me-Generation' yet discerning and well acquainted with best of their interest. 'Twitter' and 'Linked in' are sites that stand out from the above named few. 'Twitter' is a micro blogging site with a limitation of 140 characters total as the blog size. 'Linked in' is basically a business oriented social networking site but the population is above the age of 35 or higher and has around 740 million at present users less than a million. Facebook is a social sharing site with largest opportunity to be heard it had 2.8 billion users till 2020 of whom the maximum users are in the age of 24-35. The other two sites Instagram and Google + are social sites the nuances need to be observed. Instagram is one in which photograph and even videos (of 15 seconds) can be seen, Google+ is social network site where the Brands and Users go tango.

The cut out job of the green firms and advocates are three namely, 1) engaging 2) building credibility and 3) the compelling story, that tell the need and the specific firm's response<sup>24</sup>. Engaging is the most crucial work as the target population of 18 to 35 may not be making major financial gifts but are socially conscious young adults and can be ideal volunteers and request membership status, therefore organizations or institutions that induct them as indirect donors could develop this habit and build long-term relationships. People who do not know what the firm or institution does cannot be passionate to the green cause and without passion, it is much more difficult to engage people as supporters, volunteers and donors.

Building credibility is imperative, the millennial are quite wary of online scams and news stories recounting the action of unscrupulous charities. The donors know what to ask to the Non-Profit Organization(NPO)/Institution or the Social Purpose Organization(SPO). They of are careful in demanding and critically evaluating that fund donated are spent for the focused purpose or area and not on marketing and administrative cost/capital asset creation.

The firms in the field of green marketing are required to be responsive, adaptive and entrepreneurial<sup>25</sup> and here in the role of social media marketing is very important. They therefore need to build stories to engage donors, volunteers, stakeholders and supporters with the need to awaken in them the passion to solve the problem or cause at hand. This will help the NPO or SPO to heart (action, passion) as well as the head (credibility, awareness). Social Multi-Media Marketing brings the capability that makes it easier than ever to use photos, videos, audio and short vignettes to capture attention, educate and make an emotional connection and reach millions by becoming viral online. Let us become a bit more precise and focal.

### **Case for Specific Usage of Pinterest, Twitter, Facebook, and Linked in.**

Experience shows that Linked in has been effective in generating donors that make sense. Getting these donors, board members, supporters and volunteers into through conversation and sharing not so known secrets through story building into the problem solving in reference to need and the cause to be addressed is very effective in generating revenue. Further getting into networks through snowballing with these virtual acquaintances a good number of volunteers

and donors are created for credibility and awareness. Community engagement in first step is stretched towards a committed individual engagement. In the process using photos and videos are optimally used and then the benefits of win-win is acknowledged through thanks giving and widely circulated appreciations. Creating share worthy posts are doors that open up endorsement for the firm by all stakeholders.

The second is Pinterest where one on green can talk about the green, designs and the green documents generated. In experimental stage where demonstration projects or the outreach programs with field executions of knowledge and skill can be tried and attention and diffusion of knowledge and skills are ventured in return. This brings into boost of one's own knowledge and refurbished knowledge and skills at least of cost, thereby the indirect market testing becomes possible which otherwise would have been costly at the same time the experimental knowledge, experiential knowledge and skill in due course gets validated on others sharing, money and labour also. The triumph as the outcome should be shared among the interested and involved parties with a promise of virtual lab for further growth.

Face book is akin to a virtual party which helps to search the spectators who would like to be the firm's audiences and could be qualified to become the members and donors. The reach of facebook is unlimited. On firm's face book page, one can even conduct some sort of interviews that could be quite discerning to gauge the drive and then combine it with some triggering cues to get the desired response yet look quite open and deliberative for being collaborative and using the creations at later stage for long term green marketing avenues.

Twitters are blogs that are short but filtered and are navigational bends. They can be used to share in the -moment urgent needs that can be met by regular people while disaster or quick response and reflection of action is to be initiated and popularized. Emergency helpers and special skill providers in marketing of green product or services could be located and called for action.

The goal of the above referred social websites should be monitoring the brand, cultivating the discussion and engagement, sharing the information and ultimately enjoying the benefits of social validation.

### **Capacity Expansion**

The reduction of fossil fuel usage is a goal for the 'Mint Green' market; therefore 'Petrol' usage in car is to be reduced. i.e., 'Mint Green market'. The 'Mint Green' is a concept to look for sustainable ways to replace an existing product or service (this is contrary to the 'Dark Green' where in one ponders whether it is desirable to produce the so called Sustainable substitute, if sounder what condition?).

Thus Government of India like many other countries has asked (petroleum firms that) 'petrol' be mandatorily blended with 10% of Ethanol. One of the sources of 'Ethanol' in India is Jatropha plant. Jatropha plantation is remunerative for farmer as it has become a cash crop.

In India, TATA's have also strongly signaled that they are moving out of the coal sector and moving into renewable energy, electric vehicle and hydrogen based steel making. RIL is planning multi-billion dollar investments investment in hydrogen, wind, solar, fuel cells and battery to become one of the world's top 'new energy' companies. Reliance Industries would become a net zero-carbon company by 2035. Adani is investing hugely in the solar business to become the 'world's largest' green enterprise. At the recent G20 summit Prime Minister

Narendra Modi also said that the country has been taking concrete action to meet and even exceed the Paris Agreement targets<sup>26</sup>.

A lot is coming from start-ups to refer a few who are the successful stories and international platform they like 'BECO', 'PAPPCO GREENWARE' and 'ZOGAM BAMBOO WORK' (ZBW).

A capacity is being built in the consumer market that is exportable. A few words about each is worth attention of the reader. Suraj Said, Founder, EcoBuddy put plastic wastes into use and, started selling substitutes to single-use plastic products such as bamboo toothbrushes, cotton bags, among others. The startup has already sold around 34,500 products since its inception in May 2019, and is presently catering to over 600 orders on an average every month, the firm has seven vendors from whom they buy and have embarked on educating the consumers on organic compost manufacturing and benefits of tree plantation. 'PAPPCO GREENWARE' is the creations of Anil Agarwal and Abhishek Agarwal who began this venture questing for ideas to replace single-use plastics. Today they sell seven different product lines with over 150 items, ranging from plates, glasses, and bowls, which are made from sugarcane, wheat straw, and bamboo, among others. In fact, these products are microwavable up to 100 degrees Celsius. It also leverages bio-plastics created from plants, algae, or microorganisms. Collaborative value<sup>27</sup> is banked on, working with popular clients such as Curefit, Marriott hotels, and Taj hotels to help them reduce their plastic footprint, and thereby leave a positive impact on the planet.

'ZOGAM BAMBOO WORK' (ZBW) is known for the tiffin box they market. V Ginkhanpau and Golan Suanzamung Naulak run an eco-friendly handicrafts venture by the name Zogam Bamboo Works in Lamka, Manipur. The duo uses bamboo to make pens, water bottles, and decorative pieces. The tiffin box is similar to a traditional steel one, which has three storage sections, with all of them tightly sealed to prevent any sort of leakage. These boxes can last up to three years, and can be used to store both hot and cold food<sup>28</sup>.

One important way is to incorporate Extended Producer Responsibility (EPR)<sup>29</sup> and say Plastic Waste Management (PWM) in case of India. India did take effective steps to import ban on plastic scrap in 2019. Firms too are doing their bit including plastic users such as sports gear makers. Adidas as well as plastic generators and processors such as petrochem giant Reliance Industries Limited (RIL) and packaging major UFlex. Under the 'Run for the Ocean' initiative, Adidas has sold 11 million pairs of shoes made from up-cycled marine plastic waste in 2019. UFlex doesn't waste its own waste it creates and recycles its own plastics and also recycles the waste generation from its own raw material sourced. RIL converts annually two billion post-consumer PET bottles into fibres apart from running awareness drives for waste segregation at source and efforts towards cleaning Mumbai's Methi river.

**The capacity building** should not be the case of 'Green Myopia'<sup>30</sup>. Green marketing is the marketing of products that are presumed to be environmentally safe. In order to be successful, green marketing must fulfill two objectives: improved environmental quality and customer satisfaction. Misjudging either or overemphasizing the former at the expense of the latter can be defined as green marketing myopia. All the three firms in India have been successful as they have avoided 'Green Myopia' and Green Wash. 'Green Washing'<sup>31</sup> is a term used to describe businesses, organizations, and individuals who exaggerate or make false claims about the environmental benefits of their products or services.



The capacity building only on long run will require that the firm itself develop the 'Green Retailing'. Having developed in the 'big middle' of the value chain among the primary activities, between the producer and the consumer is driven by the following<sup>32</sup>:

1. Achieving zero waste in all its functions and facilities
2. Using only renewable energy.
3. Carrying only products that are socially and environmentally sustainable.
4. Educating and facilitating customers in green consumption and post consumption.

These are to be adhered by each such capacity builders otherwise the long term survivals in the delivery of the value will be stunted.

Ottman's seven winning strategies for green marketing is the navigational bends that the organisation follows while it is using the unique selling proposition of being green in consumer offering to the domestic and the exports through inland waterways to the neighboring countries across the waterways by labour oriented inland vessels. The following are important in this respect<sup>33</sup>:

1. Understand the deeply held environmental and social beliefs attitudes and motivations, of your consumers and other stakeholders and develop a long-term plan to align with them.
2. Create new products and services that balance consumer's desires for quality, convenience, and affordability and delivery with minimal adverse environmental and social impacts over the life of the product.
3. Develop a brand that possess feature, and benefits as well as engages consumers in meaningful ways about the important issues that affect their lives.
4. Credible communication should be the corporate commitment along with complete transparency.
5. Being proactive and going beyond offering delight for stakeholders. Proactively commit to doing your share to solve emerging environmental and social problems and local problem of carbon footprints and discover competitive advantage in the process.
6. Think holistically. Underscore community with users and with the broad array of corporate environmental and societal stakeholders.
7. Don't Quit. Promote responsible product use and disposal practices. Continuously strive for 'cradle to cradle' approach.

### **Contact**

This is often the need since one finds that after the proper use of Social Media the stymied growth catches due to the power of state hampering it. Social Media communication always has irrelevance and this must be checked. It requires 'Interactive Media Engagement'.<sup>34</sup> One has to keep in mind that public relations is the best feet for a firm to develop the contact with the target audience. Some of the important methods of interactive media engagements are being enumerated below:

- 1) New interview: This refers to one one-on-one interaction with the target audience who are prime for the organisation and long term goal. The interaction gets built and irons out

many problem not addressed through advertisement and other non-personal mode.

- 2) New conference; It refers to organisational announcement with group interview of organisational news source by various reporters in reference to green offerings or enviropreneurial marketing<sup>35</sup> efforts.
- 3) Studio interview: It refers to hybrid mode between interview and news conference; often involving reporter(s) or commentator(s) with individual or panel of news sources and opinion commentators and/or even activists with knowledge of green offering impactful domestic, or world or regional trade.
- 4) Satellite media tour: It is in-studio interview mediated by satellite, with reporter/commentator in one location and interviewees elsewhere who have respect and good knowledge of Indian green business and the avenues as well as national and business links.
- 5) Editorial Conference:- It is the meeting between organisational news sources with editors and editorial boards of newspaper or other news media.

### **Summary**

The idea of success that the 4Cs' is banking on is evidenced already in the international trade of many foreign countries. In reference To India it is finding opportunity in the market of 3Ps' and segmentation, where in the focus of market approach lies. This being curated one can delve into properly understanding the kind of communication that is required and resultant impact will be capacity expansion. A capacity expansion leads one to understand how to earn profit along with success for long term sustainability..

### **REFERENCES:**

1. Baru Sanjay, Hindustan & The 5 Stans; TOI, January 26, 2022 p.p. An Ecstasy)
2. Mishra Neelkanth, Good News Befire Budget. TOI, January 31, 2022.p.p.'The Afflicted'
3. www. Wikipedia; Default effect accessed on April 23,2022.
4. Kotler Philip et al., Marketing Management, Prentice Hall India
5. Khan Shadaab, Modi Vaibhav, Kumar Vineet, Green Technology and Sustainability Market; <https://www.alliedmarketresearch.com/green-technology-and-sustainability-market> accessed on 10.04,20226.
6. Crepin Cristophe, Zervos Hadad Faris,Zakherenka Andrew, Green, Resilient and Inclusive Development; End Poverty in South Asia, January 6, 2022.
7. Kumar Vineet, Sri Lanka's inorganic transition to organic farming , Down to earth, Wednesday06 October 2021
8. Kasliwal Ria, Fostering market demand of green industries, <http://www.org/expert-speak/fostering-maket-demand-green-industries/> accessed on March 25, 2022.
9. Anderson Inger, The business of Sustainability: Opportunities for India. Speech delivered at Shri Ram Research Festival hosted by the Shri Ram College of Commerce, University of Delhi.under UN Environment Program accessed on April 23, 2022.
10. Xavier, M.J.;Marketing in New Millenium, S.C. Chand Publication,New Delhi, 1999 11Mc Kinsey Company accessed through Google .com on May 3, 2022.

11. Kim, Chan.W., Mauborgne Renee; Blue Ocean Strategy; Harvard Business Press, Massachusetts, 2004
12. [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Make\\_in\\_India#cite\\_note-Focus-2](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Make_in_India#cite_note-Focus-2) accessed on April 24, 2022.
13. Khalap Kiran, The Shocking Truth about Sustainability, Brand Equity, Times of India, May 27, 2022.
14. Singh Namrata, 'We are on the Cusp of A Purpose Revolution', Times of India, April 21, 2022. pp.12.
15. Elkington, J., Hailes, J. and Makower, The Green Consumer. Penguin, New York.(1990)
16. Kirchgeorg Manfred, Winn.I.Monika: Bottom of the Pyramid; [www.Britanica.com](http://www.Britanica.com) accessed on May 14, 2022.
17. Ottman .A.Jacquely; The New Rules of Green Marketing, Large Print Books, Braille & Daisy, 2011p.p.64
18. <https://www.morganstanley.com/ideas/india-millennials-makeover-disruption-growth> accessed on 18.05.2022
19. Stanton J.W., Walker J.B., and Etzel J.M. Marketing, Tata Mc GrawHill, New Delhi, 13th Edition, p.p.121
20. Chaffey D., Chadwick E.F., Jhonston K., and Mayer R., Internet Marketing, Pearson India Education Services Pvt. Ltd, Noida, 2016, p.p. 54.
21. Thomas R. A., Lewinson M.Dale, Hauser J.W., Foley M. L.; Direct Marketing in Action; Praeger Publishers, West Port. 2007. pp.134.
22. Gordin, Seth.; Permission Marketing, Simon and Schuster, New York, 1999.
23. Martin, Z.M., The Essential Social Media Marketing Handbook, Rupa Publications India Pvt Ltd, New Delhi, 2018.pp.193
24. Saha Suvasis; Governance and Role of State impacting the Green Industry, Asian Journal of Multidimensional Research, Vol 11, Issue one, January 2022. DOI: 10.5958/2278-4853.2022.00008.8
25. Kotler Philip, Et.Al.; Marketing Management, Pearson Education Services Pvt Ltd, Noida, 2022 pg 39.
26. in the web -[yourstory.com/ social story/eco-friendly startups/ work place green](http://yourstory.com/social-story/eco-friendly-startups/work-place-green) accessed on 13.08.2020
27. Ray Suchetana; Resuming the Battle Against Plastic; E.T. January 12, 2021.p.p. 7
28. From Wikipedia, the free encyclopedia accessed on 19.06.2022
29. Smith M. Alastair; Green Washing in the book Green Business edited by Nevin Cohen and Paul Robbins, Sage Book Series, New Delhi, pp.304.
30. Martin M.D., Schouten W.John; Green Retailing; in the book Green Business edited by NevinCohen and Paul Robbins, Sage Book Series, New Delhi, pp.299.
31. Ottoman A.J., The New Rules of Green Marketing, Read How You Want, New York

2010.pp 96-98.

**32.** Smith Ron, Public Relations, Rouledge publication, London and New York, 2014, p.p.193

**33.** Varadarajn, R.P., Enviropreneurial Marketing, Marketing Encyclopedia of AMACOM, NTC Business Book, Illinois, USA, 1995, p.p.18

## THEORETICAL METHODOLOGICAL BASIS OF THE COMBINATION OF NATURE AND HUMAN RELATIONS

**Abdumalikov Abdulatif\***

\*Associate Professor,  
PhD,  
Fergana State University,  
Fergana City, UZBEKISTAN  
Email id: abdumalikov.a@gmail.com

**DOI: 10.5958/2278-4853.2022.00159.8**

---

### ABSTRACT

*As a result of global development, significant changes have taken place in the complex relationship between man and nature. On the one hand, the application of the law of interdependence of quantitative and qualitative changes, the negative consequences of human activity accumulated over centuries have formed new environmental contradictions. In democratic, developed countries, philosophical research centers around the world, scientific research is being conducted to systematize efforts to prevent the global environmental crisis and solve regional environmental problems.*

*Currently, in the ecological landscape of the world, environmental protection is becoming a global problem, indicating that the world community is becoming the basis for the integration of social, economic and cultural relations.*

**KEYWORDS:** *Nature, Society, Ecology, Legal Culture, Ecological Consciousness, Society.*

---

### INTRODUCTION

All societies formed in the course of social development interacted within the framework of cultural ties of different civilizations and peoples. The society has preserved its identity also because it was able to reflect in its development the influence of national and universal values. Therefore, "the greater the tendency to generalize and unify the external signs of life, the more people respects the components that characterize their inner world, such as traditions, religion, and culture of their people"[1].

At the new stage of development, the more democratic interpersonal social, economic and cultural relations are, the more open the inner world of a person will be, the perceptual and cognitive world that meets the goals of sustainable development. The content of democratic processes in society is valuable only through democracy (cognitive democracy) in the inner world, the psyche and the human heart. In the context of the development of civil society, it is necessary to take into account the influence of public consciousness on this internal, cognitive process, its dependence on public relations.

## **MAIN PART**

It should be noted that civil society recognizes as its highest values the interests of a person in whom democratic values are reflected in the personality, in human cognitive democracy, that is, in civil society these two features of human activity are dialectically combined.

Civil society and the social environment are dialectically developing phenomena. As the social space affects the human mind, so the mind affects the environment, the social space. However, social space, the environment as an objective being affects human activity, and consciousness in the form of a subjective phenomenon leads a person to transform into an objective being. The combination of objectivity and subjectivity indicates the development of the existing social system as a whole, in accordance with the general laws of human and social life. They cannot be opposed to each other as antipodes.

The analysis of spiritual and ethical conditions, objective and subjective conditions, philosophical issues of environmentally sustainable development of society ultimately determines the prospects of civilization.

In our country, work is being carried out on a scientific basis to ensure an environmentally safe environment necessary for social and economic life, nature protection and rational use of natural resources, coordination of the "nature-society-man" system. In the context of globalization, special attention is paid to the issues of sustainable socio-economic development and environmental security"[2]. From this point of view, an urgent task is to study the essence of the institutional system of environmental safety, the mechanisms of its implementation in society, the content and trends of socio-philosophical development, as well as the development of scientific, theoretical and practical conclusions and recommendations. In Central Asia, the theological and philosophical foundations of moral relations with nature, a system of legal norms have been created, and they occupy a special place in the Islamic world, in the world. In particular, the philosophical views of such great scientists as Imam al-Bukhari, Imam at-Termizi, al-Moturudi, Muhammad al-Gazzali, Mahmud az-Zamakhshari, Jalaliddin Rumi on the relationship between nature and man have made a great contribution to the development of ecological spiritual and moral teachings. In particular, the socio-ethical views put forward in the philosophy of mysticism have served as an important scientific source in the study of the subject, the modern nature of man's attitude to the environment.

It should be noted that medieval Western philosophers made an important contribution to the theoretical and methodological clarification of the functional role of spiritual values in the management of relations between nature and society. At the same time, the scientific research of philosophers and sociologists around the world is of particular importance, in particular, the study of the essence of environmental ethics, the formation and development of the ecological culture of the individual, its role in human and social development is important.

At each stage of the development of society, different methodological approaches to the relationship between man and nature, alternative scientific views, evaluation criteria are formed, the reasons for which should be sought in the change of levels of ecological consciousness, paradigms of personality. However, environmental ethics has always been a priority in assessing the nature of public relations, the level of their development.

In particular, according to the teachings of Zoroaster, any crime against nature is a grave sin and a code of conduct has been developed according to the criteria of a person's attitude to nature,



responsibility for environmental protection, natural resources and moral norms of duty, flora and fauna. The role of Islam in public life, strengthening its real position in legal, moral relations, human education, in theological and philosophical teachings based on the hadiths of the Holy Quran and the activities of the Prophet Mukhammad, caution, not to bring them to bankruptcy and leave them to future generations. In particular, it can be seen that the teachings of representatives of mystical philosophy on environmental ethics, the protection of natural elements, a combination of universal and Islamic spiritual and moral values of Islam. The theoretical and practical significance of the teachings of scientists created in our country in the XVI-XIX centuries, about the socio-economic causes of the ecological crisis and its negative consequences associated with ignorance, spiritual poverty in society, can be considered as a systemic form of moral determinism. The adaptation of ethical norms defining the nature-society-man relationship to the characteristics of the ecological space is important to ensure its sustainability. Because "an important condition for environmental management is the understanding of the moral responsibility of the individual for the future of nature and society. In this context, moral responsibility performs two functions: to alternate a person's subjective responsibility with objective necessity; to express one's will taking into account one's personal and public interests"[3]. Although such an approach to the issue has a certain methodological significance, it should be concretized in accordance with the national mentality of the peoples living in the existing ecological space.

Indeed, it is worth noting the legacy of historically established moral norms in the ecological space, the objective conditions for improving its institutional system of transformation in the minds of generations, the possibility of combining the subject and factors.

In the history of mankind, the moral norms governing the relationship "nature – society – man " were determined by a system of forms of public consciousness; secondly, national environmental ethical norms are a real manifestation of universal values; thirdly, the role of one or another form of public consciousness in the management of the relationship "nature-society-man" loses its significance if it is generalized and separated from environmental values; fourthly, the effectiveness of environmental values in the management of relations "nature-society-man" is an important criterion determining the level of development of society; fifthly, the transformation of integrative activity of forms of social consciousness into life in the management of relations "nature-society-man" meets the environmental interests of mankind.

The means of integrating forms of social consciousness in society within the framework of universal ecological moral norms are constantly developing. Indeed, the idea of sustainable ecological development cannot be realized without human interest in integrating forms of social consciousness and morality at the global level within the framework of a single environmental goal. Accordingly, in the management of this system, any form of social consciousness performs a specific integrative function.

Man manifests himself in all spheres of human activity as a socio-cultural being in interaction with nature. Man changes and assimilates nature in accordance with his spiritual, economic need. This is the rationality of this activity, the ability to foresee the consequences of its interference in natural processes, the goal of preserving the natural-regenerative potential of the biosphere, the systematic interaction of management institutions based on innovation [4]. Cardinal changes in the relationship between society and nature have changed both the spiritual attitude of man to nature and the criteria for understanding its objectivity, content, and patterns of development.

The researchers note that a new era is coming in the relationship between nature, society and man, a new ecological thinking is emerging, but the natural resources of the planet, the possibilities of compensating for violations in the ecosystem of the biosphere are limited, technologies and production technologies for the biosphere.

Emphasizes that harmless alternative production is characterized by an understanding of the need for development from case to case. The need to harmonize nature and society, human relations in Uzbekistan is due to the fact that most of the energy consumed in the national economy is produced using non-renewable natural resources, limited reserves of these resources, environmental pollution due to the rapid development of industry, water scarcity, drying of the Aral Sea. It is explained by the aggravation of environmental problems. The sustainable development of the economy of Uzbekistan, the development of a long-term strategy for structural transformation requires taking into account internal and global processes and challenges.

According to the UN World Meteorological Organization, the global average annual temperature today has risen by 1 °C from the level of 1880. In Uzbekistan, the average annual temperature for the same period increased by 1.6 C (from 13.2 to 14.8 C)[5]. The average rate of global warming in our country is higher than the global average. Global warming has a negative impact on the state of ecosystems, leading to a deterioration of the ecological situation in the Republic of Karakalpakstan, Khorezm, and Bukhara, Navoi, Kashkadarya, Samarkand and Surkhandarya regions of the Aral Sea. Therefore, in order to comprehensively respond to the growing global threats associated with climate change, the Paris Agreement was adopted on December 12, 2015 at the 21st session of the UN Framework Conference on Climate Change in the French capital. The agreement entered into force on November 4, 2016 and will be effective from 2020. It should be noted that 180 of the 197 signatories to the Paris Agreement have ratified the document. Countries that have not ratified the treaty have observer status and have restrictions on the use of climate finance.

The goal of the Paris Agreement is to keep global warming on the planet at 2 C Celsius by 2030 relative to the average temperature during industrial development by 2020 and limit temperature rise to 1.5 C by 2050, reduce global greenhouse gas emissions by 40-70% and reduce it to 0 or minus by 2100.

At the new stage of society's development, the role and place of environmental ethics in the rational management of the "nature-society-man" relationship increases, and its regulatory function manifests itself in the following cases:

1. Understands the causes and trends of the development of the "nature-society-man" relations necessary for the development and seeks to eliminate them through the process of improving environmental ethics and culture.
2. The transition from anthropocentrism to biospherocentrism takes place on the basis of understanding the essential unity of the relationship between man and nature.
3. During the period of democratic reforms, the practical importance of environmental ethics in creating optimal opportunities for humans and future generations to live in harmony with nature is increasing.

4. Innovative mechanisms and institutions are being formed for organizing and managing the activities of public structures based on environmental ethics and monitoring their activities in terms of compliance with environmental standards.

5. It becomes a social necessity to translate knowledge and ethical criteria of the ecological balance of the biosphere into the content of each person's worldview and activity.

Accordingly, scientific management of the process of ecologization of the spirituality of the individual, on the one hand, serves as a factor preventing its transformation into a corporate interest, corporate ethics, which determines only its attitude to nature. Understanding that development is part of the "society-nature-man" system and that its effectiveness depends on the activities of each individual, encourages a reassessment of social interests and subordination to the interests of the entire system.

## CONCLUSION

In the philosophical study of the spiritual and moral foundations of the "nature-society-man" relationship during the deepening of democratic transformations, attention should be paid to the formation of environmental ethics in the minds of representatives of social strata and economic strata. Because all the advantages and disadvantages of human activity are clearly visible in the sphere of everyday life. If a person's everyday activities begin to conflict with the environmental interests of the people around him and restrict their natural right to life, this will have a negative impact on the development of society.

## REFERENCES:

1. Гаджиев К.С. Введение В Геополитику. 2- Изд., Доп.И Перераб.–Москва: 2000. –С. 243.
2. Ўзбекистон Республикаси Президентининг Фармони “Ўзбекистон Республикасини Ривожланиши Бўйича Ҳаракатлар Стратегияси Тўғрисида” Ўзбекистон Республикаси Қонун Хужжатлар Тўплами, 2017 й. 6– Сон. 70-Модда.
3. Қўйлиев Т. Экологик Маданиятнинг Шаклланиш Ва Ривожланиш Хусусиятлари. – Тошкент: Тайи, 2007. –Б. 67-68.
4. Туленова К. Создать Экологически Чистую Среду. // Экономика И Статистика. Тошкент:-1996.-№ 5-6. -С.62-63.
5. Туленова К. Создать Экологически Чистую Среду. // Экономика И Статистика. Тошкент:-1996.-№ 5-6. -С.62-63.
6. Каримов, У. У. (2017). Роль Средств Массовой Информации В Процессе Глобализации. In *Перспективные Информационные Технологии (Пит 2017)* (Рр. 1189-1192).
7. Каримов, У., & Каримова, Г. (2018). Геополитическая Конкуренция В Информационном Пространстве. In *Перспективные Информационные Технологии (Пит 2018)* (Рр. 1368-1372).
8. Rayimov, A. A., & Karimova, G. Y. (2021). Social Aspects of the Formation Of Social Activity In Youth. *Oriental Journal of Social Sciences*, 29-32.

9. Usmanov, N., Ganiev, B. S., & Karimova, G. Y. (2021). The Philosophical Basis for the Formation of Spiritual Maturity among Young People. *Oriental Journal of Social Sciences*, 33-37.
10. Рафикова, Д. К., & Каримова, Г. Й. (2020). Ёшларни Ижтимоий Фаоллигини Оширишда Қадриятларнинг Аҳамияти. *Перекрёсток Культуры*, 2(1).
11. Tojaliev, A. A. (2021). Higher Education System-A Guarantee of Sustainable Development Of Society. *Academicia: An International Multidisciplinary Research Journal*, 11(9), 1021-1025.
12. Tojaliyev, A. A. (2020, December). The Role of Innovative Activities of Highly Qualified Personnel in the Strategic Development of the Regions. In *International Scientific and Current Research Conferences* (Pp. 154-156).
13. Tojaliyev, A. A. (2019). The Necessite of Using Innovations in New Developing Process Higher Education. *Scientific Bulletin of Namangan State University*, 1(4), 132-136.
14. Tojaliyev, A. A. Perfection of Bachelor Degree Students Training In the Conditions of Innovative Development. *Published European Journal Of Business Social Sciences (Ejbss)*, 7, 133-141.
15. Tojaliyev, A., & Tojaliyeva, G. (2021). Innovative Directions in the Field Of Pedagogical Education. *Теория И Практика Современной Науки*, (5), 22-25.
16. Аликулова, М. М. & Тожалиев, А. А. (2019). Вояга Етмаган Болаларда Салбий Хулқнинг Пайдо Бўлиш Хусусиятлари. *Современное Образование (Узбекистан)*, (8 (81)), 37-42.
17. Arzimatova, I. M. (2020). Spiritual Culture of Personality and Artistic and Aesthetic Changes. *Scientific Bulletin of Namangan State University*, 2(11), 160-165.
18. Arzimatova, I. M. (2022). Relationship of Aesthetic Culture and Spirituality of Personality. *The American Journal of Applied Sciences*, 3(02), 100-104.
19. Arzimatova, I. M. (2021). Women's Rights in Government of A Democratic Society. *Eurasian Scientific Herald*, 2, 23-27.
20. Arzimatova, I. (2022). The Main Aspects of the Moral and Aesthetic Culture Of the Leading Cadres In The New Stage Of Development Of Society. *Oriental Journal of Social Sciences*, 2(1), 63-72.
21. Arzimatova, I. M. (2021). The Role of the Family Environment in Personal Education. *International Journal of Culture and Modernity*, 10, 13-17.
22. Alimjanova, M. (2020). Pedagogical System of Formation of Responsibility in Primary School Students On The Basis Of National Values. *Theoretical & Applied Science*, (4), 914-917.
23. Alimjanova, M. (2021). About Gender Stereotypes. *Emergent: Journal Of Educational Discoveries And Lifelong Learning (Ejedl)*, 2(06), 72-76.
24. Каримов, Ў., Каримова, Г., & Каримов, Ў. (2021). Илм-Фан Ва Таълим Соҳасидаги Ахборотлашув. *Central Asian Academic Journal Of Scientific Research*, 1(1), 103-110.

25. Каримова, Г. Й. (2018). Роль Конституции В Построении Правового Государства И Гражданского Общества. *Теория И Практика Современной Науки*, (2), 161-163.
26. Bozarov, D. M., & Karimova, G. Y. (2021). Role of the Self-Organization Model In Complex Social Systems. *Oriental Journal of Social Sciences*, 1-9.
27. Каримова, Г., Акбарова, М., Акрамжонов, Қ., & Йўлдашева, Г. (2021). Жамият Ижтимоий Тараққиётида Инновацион Технологияларнинг Аҳамияти. *Интернаука*, (10-3), 42-43.
28. Yuldashev, I. A. (2020). Pedagogical Bases of Formation of Social Activity In Pedagogical Sciences. *Теория И Практика Современной Науки*, (5), 67-69.
29. Yuldashev, I., & Toshboltaeva, N. I. (2020). Analysis of Personality Traits In Athlete Activities. In *Психологическое Здоровье Населения Как Важный Фактор Обеспечения Процветания Общества* (Pp. 72-74).
30. Yuldashov, I., & Goynazarov, G. (2021). A Need to Improve the Institutional System for Increasing the Social Activity of Young People at The Stage Of Development. *Интернаука*, (12-3), 18-19.
31. Isroilov, M. (2022). The System of Education and Its Interaction with the Concept of Spirituality. *Asian Journal of Multidimensional Research*, 11(1), 88-93.
32. Ismoilovich, I. M. (2021). The Society Is At A New Stage of Development Priority In Education System Reform Functions.
33. Ismoilovich, I. M. (2021, July). Issues of Transformation Of Educational Experience Of Developed Countries. In *Euro-Asia Conferences* (Pp. 227-239).
34. Матмусаева, М. А. (2017). Оилада Болаларни Меҳнатга Ўргатиш. *Молодой Ученый*, (4-2), 23-24.
35. Матмусаева, М. А. (2016). Талабалар Портфолиоларини Тайёрлаш Шароитлари. In *Сборники Конференций Ниц Социосфера* (No. 9, Pp. 129-131). Vedecko Vydavatel'ske Centrum Sociosfera-Cz Sro.
36. Матмусаева, М. А. (2016). Талабаларнинг Ўқув Фаолиятларини Назорат Қилишнинг Инновацион Характери. In *Сборники Конференций Ниц Социосфера* (No. 9, Pp. 127-128). Vedecko Vydavatel'ske Centrum Sociosfera-Cz Sro.
37. Abdumalikov, A. A. (2019). Environmental Ecological Policy in Uzbekistan and Necessity Of Formation Of Rational Communication To Nature. *Scientific Bulletin of Namangan State University*, 1(9), 94-101.
38. Khakimovich, K. N., & Abdullazhanovich, A. A. (2021). Joint International Educational Program As An Important Form Of Training Bachelors In The Conditions Of A New Stage Of Development.
39. Абдумаликов, А. А. (2017). Формирование Информационной Культуры Молодежи. *Theoretical & Applied Science*, (11), 277-280.
40. Abdumalikov, A. A. (2017). Formation of Youth Information Culture. *Isj Theoretical & Applied Science*, 11(55), 277-280.

- 41.** Абдумаликов, А. А. (2020). Violation of Contradictions between Society and Nature as A Global Civilization. *Scientific Bulletin of Namangan State University*, 2(4), 218-224.
- 42.** Azamjonovich, I. I. (2021). The Death Penalty for a Crime and Its Philosophical and Legal Aspects. *Academicia: An International Multidisciplinary Research Journal*, 11(1), 1376-1381.
- 43.** Абдумаликов, А. А. (2019). Human and Natural Harmony in the Historical Process. *Scientific Bulletin of Namangan State University*, 1(5), 205-209.



## INFLUENCE OF SOIL AND CLIMATIC CONDITIONS OF THE EXPERIMENT AREA IN FERGANA REGION ON THE WEIGHT OF PEA PODS

**Madina Furqatovna Gaybullaeva\***

\*Lecturer,  
Fergana State University,  
Fergana City, UZBEKISTAN  
Email id: mf.gaybullaevna@mail.ru

**DOI: 10.5958/2278-4853.2022.00160.4**

---

### ABSTRACT

*Soil is a natural structure formed by changes in the surface layers of the lithosphere under the influence of water, air, and living organisms, and consists of genetically interconnected horizons. The surface and fertile layer of the earth's crust. The most important feature of soil that distinguishes it from light rocks is its fertility.*

**KEYWORDS:** *Rocks, Environmental Factors, Soil Composition, Acid, Alkali, Salt, Manure, Phosphorus and Potassium Fertilizers, Horticulture, Vegetables, Viticulture, Cotton, Winter Wheat and Legumes.*

---

### INTRODUCTION

Soil science deals with the study and classification of soils, the development of methods to improve their composition and increase their productivity. Soil is composed of solid, liquid, gaseous and living components. The solid part of the soil is composed of minerals. In their natural location, solid particles occupy a certain part of the soil mass, and the rest are pores of various sizes and shapes between the particles and their aggregates. The total sum of these voids is called the soil porosity. Soil porosity is capillary and noncapillary. The small particles of capillary porous soil are equal to the volume between the capillaries, and the non-capillary porosity is equal to the volume of the large pores between the macro structural elements. Soil-forming factors: climate, relief, soil-forming rocks, natural and cultivated plants, but at the level of fertility, especially the nature of land use. The most important factors of soil fertility are: the availability of nutrients necessary for plant growth and their variety; the presence of moisture that the plant can absorb; good soil, aeration; structural condition and structure; amount of toxic substances (acid, alkali, salt, etc.); soil reaction and so on. The sum of these characteristics determines the level of civilization of the soil.

### MAIN PART

Resolution of the Cabinet of Ministers of the Republic of Uzbekistan No. 709, specializing in the production of horticulture, viticulture, potatoes and other foods, as well as increasing the cultivation of competitive products and the village. In order to increase the interest of agricultural and medicinal plants in 2020-2021 in the cultivation of vegetables, potato, melons, legumes and medicinal plants in 2020-2021 in the cultivation of the agricultural and medicinal plants in 2020-2021 in the cultivation of the agricultural sector in 2020-2021 in the cultivation of the entities of

the farm growing entities in 2020-2021, and in the food products of the region It is important to establish strict control over the cultivation of agricultural products required on the basis of consumer standards.

In recent years, research work was held in 2016-2020 from Chimyon Lanker Fayz, which is located in the Chimyon Hills in Fergana district. The city of the city of Andijan region is connected by the west of the west, with the land of Toshloq district, and then occupied by the west, and then occupied by the west, then the west of the city, and then the west of the Basharik district, then the west. Consists of cultural crops such as vegetables, viticulture, cotton, winter wheat. Many lands are removed through water through pumps. After the autumn wheat, fodder, onions, and the farmers sometimes sow evening mash.

Summer is hot and dry, the appearance of winter is cold and varies during the weather, sprouts, sprouting more in winter.

The sum of 4400-45000 cums is the sum of 4400-45000. In recent years, there have been significant changes in experimental fields in agroFysis and agrochemicals, that is, due to the lack of agro-windows, the summer, onions, onions, evening vegetables were grown. The lesser of humus and other nutrients have been classified due to alfalfa, grain legumes, insolving stidats. Therefore, it was necessary to restore the physical-chemical, mechanical composition of the soil. Because the amount of the product is cultivated only with nitrogen, phosphorus, potassium fertilizers, reducing the level of profitability due to the value of fertilizers.

The experiments were conducted at the beginning of the Chimgan oil wells, which was held in Satkinov C, owned by the Chimgan Service Cluster. Farming autumn wheat + worked in the turning planting system. In June 2016, the wheat was planted in June, 10 hectares of 10 tons per 100 kg / ha carphosphate and 100 kg / potassium chlorine. Moistricity in chicken manure was found to 40% of moisture, nitrogen -1.62%, P2O5 -1.65, k2O -1.38%. Experimates The region's general territory is distinguished by climatic conditions. Factors such as mountains, reliefs, solar radiation, atmospheric circulation, environmental condition, are similar to factors in the formation of the climate of the Fergana Valley, surrounding the territory.

Injured the annual phosphorus and potassium fertilizers, the annual phosphorus and potassium fertilizers were slammed into the field, dropped at 28-32 cm, and leaked after 3 days, 4 60 cm is for wet water among the 60 cm lane. The OTT was taken.

The seeds of pea were sown in rose with the drug in the dark building with a nitrogen drug. The row of the row was planted to a depth of 60 cm 3-5 cm Dumn, due to sufficientness, and fully shifted after 7 days. No rainfall was observed in the summer, almost there was almost no escape phase. It was cultivated 3 times during the growing season. Nitrogen fertilizer and dried manure options, built during the growing season, was poured into a depth of 12 to 13 cm deep. During the season, it was stopped to cleanse twice 2 times, watered 3 times. A total of 3855 m3 / ha consumed. Each early place in spring 2018, the tanks in the Roots in 2017 were found that the roots were formed without the beginning of the gout when it was facilitated by Nitrogen. The most tonges were observed when they were given nitrogen fertilizer before sowing but accelerated the germination of weeds. In the early spring experimental options in 2018, it was read 2 at the beginning of the ripening period and the beginning of the ripition period. Each time every time you eat 850-900 m3 of water.

In June this year, in June, on July 8, the seeds were repeatedly planted with drugs with nitrogen. All grass purposes were completed, planned fertilizer, fertilization, watering, for cultivation for moisture storage. The plow was driven at a depth of 30-32 cm to the first October 18 of 2018 and the 2019 experience of 2019. The plan broke the phosphorus, potassium fertilizers. In the spring of 2019, 2019, with the grounds and then deeply, he was chined before planting, Moda. This year's spring spring planted to spend the planting in April. Agrotechnological work marked in every options were fully met, along with the drawing and work of the soil, and wet water was given and planted on April 12. During the growing season 3 times watering, 2 pinks and handy with the weeds. In the decade of July this year, the formation was harvested and driven; all agro events in the plan were fully implemented and laid the groundwork for abundant and quality formation.

Those for the first time is the first ecological factors because of the first time we grow in a pea, that is, the level of hugging with rhizhiosis, moisture levels, temperature levels, temperature, when the amount of nitrogen fertilizers changes in the number and their weight of them. It was a

detection.

Professor Pasypanov G.S (1983) According to Nitrogen Fertilizer (for Biomass), spending 65 kg / phosphorus 19-26 kg, and potassium by 26-29 kg / potassium Although the amount of nitrogen fertilizers increased, we see that it has increased in 2018 and 2019 to grow weight in 2018 and 2019, it increases during the gas phase in 2018 and 2019.

**Impact of nitrogen fertilizer should be formed in the formation of turbines in the Nature plant (weight, g)**

Options	Bucket			Flowering			Oreless without Дуккаклаш		
	2017	2018	2019	2017	2018	2019	2017	2018	2019
1. Control	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
2. organic fertilizer 10 t / g	12,0	12,1	12,3	13,6	14,6	14,8	16,4	17,1	16,3
3. N-60 kg / ga	13,2	13,6	14,4	15,4	15,9	16,0	17,5	18,2	19,3
4. N-90 kg / ga	15,2	14,8	15,6	18,2	19,5	19,4	18,1	17,8	18,3
5. N-120 kg/ga	16,1	16,3	15,7	20,0	20,0	21,0	20,3	18,6	19,4
6. 3 t organic fertilizer	13,2	13,6	13,5	14,8	15,9	19,0	20,0	19,3	18,1
7. N-100-100-100 kg/ga	15,2	14,6	14,2	16,9	17,6	18,0	19,0	20,4	17,9

Summary the macmuses are unexpectedly increasing the nitrogen in the soil, i.e. the joint use of manure and ored fertilizers provides a positive effect on the growth, development and nitrogen growth gathering.

## CONCLUSION

In conclusion, the increase of nitrogen in humus-depleted and macronutrient-deficient soils has had a positive effect, ie the combined use of fertilizers and mineral fertilizers has a positive effect on the growth, development and nitrogen accumulation of pea plants.

## REFERENCES:

1. Atabaeva H.N. Botany. Tashkent: Labor, 2000.
2. M.Nazarov, M.Gaybullaeva. Influence of Ecological Factors on Photosynthesis Processes In Legumes. Agro Science Journal. 2020, 2nd Appendix.
3. Gaybullaeva M. F. The Role of Biomass in Savings Natural Resources // the American Journal Of Horseiculture And Floriculture Research. - 2021. - T. 3. - №. 02. - S. 1-6.
4. Pasypanov G.S. (1983) Rasteniyevodstvo Textbook

5. Abdullaeva, M. T., & Usmanova, T. E. (2022). Fundamentals of Ornamental Plant Protection. *Eurasian Journal of Academic Research*, 2(1), 104-104.
6. Abdullaeva, M. T., & Ibragimova, S. S. (2022, January). The Role of Ecological Education in The Development Of Ecological Culture In Our Youth. In *International Journal of Conference Series On Education And Social Sciences (Online)* (Vol. 2, No. 1).
7. Abdullaeva, M. T., Usmonova, T. E., & Inomov, H. E. (2021). Influence Of Number Of Seedlings And Amount Of Fertilizers On The Development Of Root System Of Winter Wheat. *Asian Journal of Multidimensional Research*, 10(10), 805-809.
8. Зокирова, С. Х., Халматова, Ш. М., Абдуллаева, М. Т., & Ахмедова, Д. М. (2020). Влияние Питательных Элементов Искусственного И Естественного Экранов В Песке На Рост, Развитие Хлопчатника. *Universum: Химия И Биология*, (12-1 (78)), 14-18.
9. Зокирова, С. Х. Халматова, Ш. М. Абдуллаева, М. Т. & Хаджибалаева, Н. М. (2020). Изучение Режима Орошения Хлопчатника В Условиях Гидроморфных Почв. *Universum: Химия И Биология*, (2 (68)).
10. Abdullayeva, M. T. L., & Maqsudova, G. M. (2021). Ekologik Ta'lim Va Tarbiyada Xorijiy Tajriba. *Oriental Renaissance: Innovative, Educational, Natural and Social Sciences*, 1(10), 159-165.
11. To'lanovna, A. M., & Maxammadjonovna, M. G. (2021). Ekologik Ta'lim Va Tarbiyada Xorijiy Tajriba.
12. Зокирова, С. Х., Акбаров, Р. Ф., Кадирова, Н. Б., & Махсталиев, Н. С. У. (2020). Характеристика Галечниковых Почв Ферганской Области И Их Пути К Улучшению. *Universum: Химия И Биология*, (2 (68)).
13. Xolikulov, M. R. (2020). The Herb (Capparis Spinosa L) Is An Important Honey Plant. *Scientific Bulletin of Namangan State University*, 2(3), 165-170.
14. Kholikulov, M. R. (2019). Current Status of Plant Resources in the Ferghana Valley and Opportunities to Use Them. *Indonesian Journal of Innovation Studies*, 8.

## THE EFFECT OF LABOR FORCE PARTICIPATION ON THE ECONOMY AND BUDGET

**Dr Nayan Deep\***

\*Assistant Professor in Economics,  
S D Mahila Mahavidyalya Narwana,  
Haryana INDIA  
Email id: nayan.anurodh@gmail.com

**DOI: 10.5958/2278-4853.2022.00151.3**

---

### ABSTRACT

*To calculate the labour force, you must include both those who are now working and those who are seeking for employment. The unemployed who aren't actively seeking for employment are not included in the labour market. Students, retirees, and stay-at-home mothers are excluded from the work force. Because they have given up hunting for a job, discouraged people do not participate in the workforce. It is necessary to be available, willing to work, and to have recently sought for employment in order for you to be considered a member of the labour force. The number of people without jobs, but who are actively looking for work, is known as the official unemployment rate. In addition to the number of people, the size of the labour force is determined by how confident these individuals are in their ability to find work. As a result, during and after a recession, the available labour pool diminishes. True even if there's no change in the number of persons who would prefer full-time employment. Even if people have stopped looking for work, their absence from the labour force is included in the calculation of the actual unemployment rate.*

**KEYWORDS:** Labor Force Participation, LFP and Economy, Economic Impact of LFP.

---

### INTRODUCTION

The work force is monitored by the Bureau of Labor Statistics. Among other things, it gives the most recent data on the present state of employment in the country each month. The average person was 42 and a half. Using the median, you may find out where half of the population ages and the other half does not. 5.1 million of those were between the ages of 16 and 19. Another 9.2 million people were 65 years of age or older. The others were between the ages of 20 and 64, which are considered prime working age [1].

When you include occupations in healthcare and jobs connected to healthcare in other industries, the healthcare business employed 14% of all workers in 2016. Next, retail commerce employed 11% of the workforce. Manufacturing accounted for 11% of total employment, while education accounted for 9%. Hospitality and other lodging establishments each employed 7% of the workforce.

### KEY TRENDS

The labour force participation rate is the percentage of the entire population that is willing and able to work. As more women entered the workforce, the rate rose from 1960 to 2000. It peaked



at 67.3 percent in January 2000. 8 By April 2004, it had fallen to 65.9 percent. As of October 2015, it had fallen to 62.3% as a result of the global financial crisis that began in 2008. Only 62.9% had been reached by the end of November of last year.

This decrease should indicate a decrease in the quantity of workers. Higher salaries should have been easier to negotiate because there were fewer workers to bargain with. As a result, the gap between rich and poor widened. Job outsourcing left 910 workers unable to compete. They also couldn't hold a candle to the technological prowess of robots. More than a dozen businesses found it more efficient to update capital equipment than to hire more staff.

The output of a workforce is measured by its productivity, which is defined as the quantity of products and services it produces [2].

By how much is produced by a certain quantity of labour and a set amount of capital, it is determined. Their output rises in direct proportion to their output. Productivity improvement is a top priority for businesses since it helps them make more money. Having a competitive edge comes from having a high rate of productivity. Individual workers, businesses, and countries all face this problem.

The Bureau of Work Statistics (BLS) anticipates the labour force to grow by 8.4 million jobs between 2018 and 2028. The fastest-growing jobs are those requiring a master's degree. A high school diploma isn't enough to go ahead in today's job market.

Increasing numbers of elderly Americans will lead to an increase in the need for healthcare and social services. The most significant expansion in private educational services is expected in the near future.

Both technology and outsourcing will cause a loss of manufacturing employment. Manufacturers are always looking for ways to make their products at a cheaper cost. Consequently, they are making industrial processes more efficient by utilising robots. The remaining employment will need computer training.

Other nations' workers, who may be paid less, are becoming increasingly competitive with the American labour force. The level of living in countries like China and India is lower than it is in the United States. Outsourcing of American employment is mostly due to this factor.

## **IMPACT ON THE ECONOMY**

The workforce in the United States is highly trained and adaptable, allowing it to swiftly adapt to shifting corporate demands. Nearly a third of the working population holds a bachelor's or associate's degree. Only 7.7 percent of the population did not complete high school. That's a lot better than it was 25 years ago.

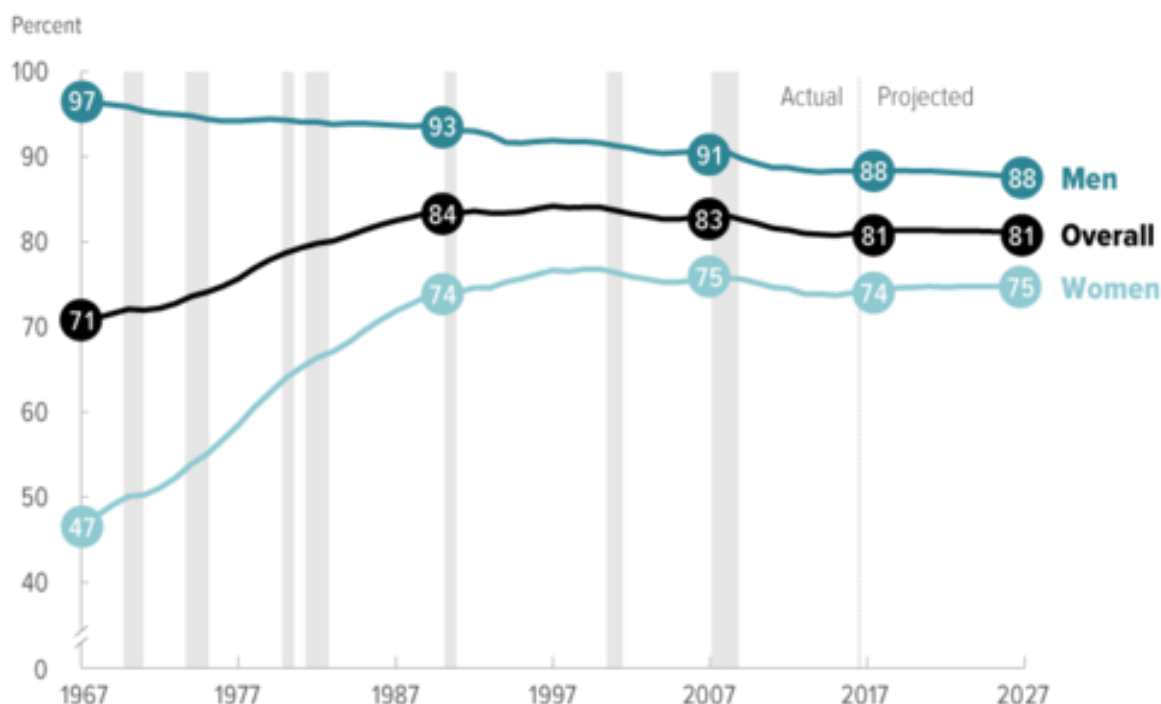
Investment in human capital in the United States has, however, decreased. In the United States, for example, the level of arithmetic proficiency of children has been steady since 2000. Those in other nations, on the other hand, have improved. Math exam results in the United States have dropped below the worldwide average as a result.

United States labour mobility is far greater than in any other modern country. Compared to Europeans, Americans are three times more likely to relocate in order to get a better position. These employees are more able to negotiate pay, switch jobs, and establish their own enterprises because of their mobility.

Because of immigration, the United States has a high degree of mobility in its workforce. More than any other country, the United States is home to 50.7 million immigrants. 26 For the most part, they lacked neither the fortitude nor the adaptability necessary to make it in a foreign land. As a result, Americans have always been more eager to take chances.

There are more people from other nations working in the United States because of immigration. Having a diverse staff allows for new ideas and viewpoints to be brought to the table. Since its inception, it has spurred a great deal of technological advancement. Silicon Valley is the world's premier technology centre because of its variety.

### Labor Force Participation Rate



**Figure 1 : Labor Force Participation Rate**

### Economics and the Supply of Labor

It is crucial for women to participate in the workforce because it promotes female empowerment in the home and in the larger community. Women's engagement in the work force and economic development are linked in a U-shaped way (Goldin, 1990, 1995). In the early phases of economic growth, when women are strongly involved in family enterprises or farm work (often unpaid) or produce for the market inside the household, female labour force participation is high. Their labour force involvement begins to decline as the manufacturing of goods and services shifts from their homes and family businesses to factories and offices. According to Goldin, women's engagement in industry and agriculture is hampered by a social stigma against wage employment done by their spouses. The stigma against married women working is diminishing as women's education levels grow and career options become more enticing.

In spite of the fact that female labour force participation has increased in most nations, there are still significant discrepancies even in the most developed countries. Religion, society, economics, and government regulations all play a role in explaining these disparities.

International comparisons of the impact of family-friendly policies give light on current trends in the United States, suggesting a possible role for government policy.

Since World War II, female labour force participation rates in the United States have been steadily increasing. However, in the mid-1990s, these rates began to plateau. In 1990, the United States ranked sixth out of 22 OECD nations in terms of female labour force participation, making it one of the most economically advanced countries. Although the US placed 17th in 2010, other countries have caught up and overtaken the United States (Blau and Kahn, 2013). Parents in the United States and other OECD nations have a lot more alternatives for flexible work schedules and longer parental leave programmes (both in terms of actual time off and monetary rewards). When compared to the other OECD countries, where family-friendly policies have been implemented to a greater extent, the decline in the participation rate of American women in the labour force between 1990 and 2010 is attributable to the greater expansion of these policies in those countries (nearly 30%). Such policies have a favourable influence on employment, as well as a role in the stagnation of participation rates in the United States.

Increasing the number of family-friendly regulations may encourage more women to enter the workforce, but they may also lead to women being pushed into lower-paying "mother track" employment. U.S. female workers have a higher rate of full-time employment and managerial or professional roles than female workers in these other nations, according to Blau and Kahn (2013a). According to Ruhm's research, lengthier leave entitlements (more than 26 weeks) have a detrimental impact on wages (1998). Women's success in the workplace may be compromised by regulations that make it easier for women to work and raise children at the same time.

### **Age and the Labor Market**

Middle-aged and older workers have historically been the most likely to be involved in the workforce. A U-shaped relationship exists between poverty and age since children and the elderly are the most likely demographics to suffer from it. When Costa (1998) studied men's labour market participation trends from 1880 to 1990, he discovered that the U-shape has been considerably compressed throughout the century, with older men and those in college the most affected. The steep right-hand side of the U-shape of poverty may be connected with the drop for older adults, for the United States and maybe the wider OECD as well. Youth unemployment is on the rise as a result of people deferring work until later in life to focus more time on studying, which has resulted in lower participation rates.

### **Employment of Women**

Over the past half-century, women's participation in the workforce has increased dramatically in many nations, resulting in a revolution in women's lives and responsibilities. Women currently account for little under half of the workforce in the United States. Only one in three women worked full time in the early 1960s, compared to 86% of males. More over a third of women (36%) worked part-time. Approximately half of all women had no paid employment at all. As a result, the revolution was well underway. Slowly but surely, women transitioned from domestic chores to jobs in offices and factories. Full-time and part-time employment for women rose steadily between 1963 and 1975. Part-time paid work for women ceases for the most part in the mid-1970s, therefore the significant growth in the 1980s and 1990s is virtually entirely due to women working full-time. In 1997, 57% of all women were employed full-time and 23% were

employed part-time. There were only 1 in 5 unpaid female workers in the United States in 1997, down from 1 in 2 female workers in 1963 to 4 out of 5 female workers in 1997.

Many emerging nations, such as China, Vietnam, and Bangladesh, have witnessed comparable increases in women's employment, with significant percentages of women in the workforce in many of these countries. Women's employment rates range from 20–50% in Islamic nations, whereas they range from 50–80% in Asian countries (United Nations 2000). In Europe, women's economic activity is relatively high in the Nordic nations (60–65 percent) and fairly low in the southern European countries (30–40 percent). Matriarchs—especially those who had children—were the driving force behind an unprecedented shift in the allocation of time between paid job and housework. Over the past 30 or 40 years, there has been minimal change in the employment of single women without children. Just as in 1963, these women were just about as likely to work full-time or part-time in 1997 as they were in 1963. In 1997, 58 percent of single moms worked full time, compared to 50 percent in 1963, a significant increase. In 1963, one in three single mothers did not work for money; by 1997, that number had risen to one in five.

Although women's employment changes were mostly driven by married women's job choices, both because much more women than men are married and because married women's work choices changed far more than those of unmarried women. In comparison to the early 1960s, both married women with children and married women without children are far more likely to work for pay and full time now. Only 41 percent of married women with no children at home worked full time in 1963; in 1997, 60 percent of married women with no children at home worked full time and the percentage not working outside the house went from 43 percent to 19. In 1963, less than one in four women worked full-time, and married moms were less likely to do so. Full-time employment has more than quadrupled to 49% by 1997. Sixty percent of married moms did not work outside the house in 1963; by 1997, less than one in four had not worked (Waite and Nielsen 2001). As in the US, Canada and Australia saw changes in the employment of married women similar to the US; as in the Nordic nations, where more than eighty percent of married women work; as in Germany; Belgium; and the Netherlands there were more modest changes (Spain and Bianchi 1996). To some extent, working as a married woman or a married mother generates dual-career families in all of these nations.

The percentage of the working population aged 16-64 who are either employed or looking for work is known as the labour force participation rate. People who are still in school, stay-at-home moms, and retirees are excluded from the labour force.

A country's working-age population may be assessed using the labour force participation rate. The number of persons who are either employed or looking for work is referred to as the participation rate. There will be no statistics on those who are not actively seeking for work, such as students, housewives, and those over 64 years old. When the economy is stagnant or in the midst of a recession, this measure is critical. It's that time of year again when unemployment statistics are being scrutinized.

When the economy is in a slump, the labour force participation rate often declines. During a recession, economic activity is low, which means that there are fewer jobs available across the country. Jobless persons are less likely to look for work, which results in decreased participation rates. The unemployment rate in the economy is also influenced by the percentage of people who participate in the workforce. Unemployment is a critical issue to keep an eye on on a regular basis in the economy.

In order to better comprehend unemployment data, participation rate is taken into consideration. Any economy might suffer from an ageing population. As a result, the labour participation rate is taken into consideration. A higher than average rate is a good indicator. However, if it falls below a certain threshold, it might be a red flag for the entire economy. Because of this, both the participation rate and unemployment statistics should be examined in tandem in order to gain an understanding of the economy's total employment situation [2].

Participation in the workforce as a percentage of total population

Between January 1948 and January 2000, the US labour force participation rate increased from 58.6 percent to 67.3 percent. A few demographic variables are to blame for this rapid rise. After World War II, a large number of post-war newborns were old enough to enter the workforce. A greater proportion of women than ever before sought work. The number of Latino workers in the workforce grew significantly in the 1990s.

Three recessions occurred during the next 20 years, resulting in a large number of individuals being forced out of the labour field, some for good. Baby Boomers' retirements and other demographic shifts coincided with recessions.

After the recession of 2001, the LFPR dropped to 65.9% in April 2004. It was never able to regain its previous heights, which were set in the year 2000. By September of that year, the participation rate had fallen to 62.4% due to the financial crisis of 2008. It has barely grown to 63.4% by January of 2020.

In April 2020, the LFPR fell to 60.2 percent as millions of workers were laid off or furloughed as a result of the 2020 recession. So far, this is the lowest it's dipped since January 1973 (60.0 percent).

Over the past two decades, the seasonally adjusted civilian labour force participation rate has been shown in the graphs below. It also demonstrates the steep decline after the financial crisis and the delayed recovery. The epidemic is also reflected in the April 2020 decline [3-6].

Workers' participation is permitted by law.

Conventions and guidelines of the International Labor Organization

Conventions and suggestions on worker engagement were first agreed upon by the International Labor Organization (ILO). Convention 155 of the International Labor Organization (ILO) is critical. Workers' representatives must be supplied with enough information regarding employer safety and health measures, and they have the right to speak with their union about such information as long as it does not reveal business secrets, according to Art.19 of the convention.

The right of employees and their representatives to inquire about and engage with the employer on any element of workplace safety and health should be guaranteed. It's also important for them to understand OSHA regulations and acquire sufficient training on workplace safety and health. Workers' rights and positions with regard to workplace safety and health are further defined in ILO Recommendation 164, which is an addendum to this agreement. ILO Recommendation 129 offers suggestions for improving internal communication in the workplace.

European occupational safety and health (OSH) regulations A "real form of consultation" (as defined by the European law on OSH) has been included to the ILO convention 155. Workers in all EU Member States and those countries that have agreed to implement the acquis



communautaire into national law, as well as enterprises that operate on a transnational basis inside the EU, are guaranteed the same minimum level of rights and protection under the *acquis communautaire*.

A worker representative for safety and health can be elected, chosen, or appointed in line with national legislation or practises of representation, according to Article 3c of the Framework Directive. As a result, the specifics of EU Member State participation in Art.11, No.2 vary greatly.

Article 16 of Directive 89/391 states that particular directives can also benefit from these types of involvement. The Framework Directive imposes additional responsibilities on the employer when it comes to dealing with single workers:

Health circles are based on the notion of quality circles, which originated in Japanese management philosophies. Japan's emphasis on using workers' knowledge to improve firm performance was highlighted in quality circles. They were frequently employed in Europe and the United States as a tool to include workers in work-related decisions.

A long-term presence is preferred in order to have a long-term impact on the company's safety and health. Management should actively develop and define competencies of health circles, and incorporate them into the overall process landscape because health circles are not hierarchical in nature. Otherwise, they may run afoul of the higher ups [7].

There are no requirements to join a health circle, and members decide the chair. They can be implemented on a temporary or permanent basis, depending on the needs of the business. As a rule, health circles are led by experienced organisational psychologists, ergonomists, or even corporate physicians in the beginning of their existence. A moderator is a person who acts as a facilitator in a group debate on health issues.

Psychosocial hazards and the strain they place on employees may be assessed using health circles, but they aren't restricted to just one type of risk. When it comes to physical dangers and other hazards in the workplace, this strategy can produce good findings and strategies for improvement.

Additionally, additional types of group engagement may be traced back to the various ways that people organize their work. In order to enhance working conditions, health circles are regularly built, while other forms have a mostly indirect influence through enabling self-determination and boosting job satisfaction, which are well-known resources [8].

In order to implement new technologies, work methods, or organisational changes, project groups or work groups are frequently formed. Using them for training can also be beneficial. Ad hoc project groups are formed and disbanded when the project is completed. They often include management representatives, employee representatives, employees, and external experts or consultants, particularly in Scandinavian nations.

Teamwork is primarily a concept in which groups of employees replace managerial control with self-discipline and shared accountability. A team leader is frequently chosen by the employees themselves. Management may choose a team leader from time to time. There are a number of ways in which OSH benefits can be realised; they include promoting communication, motivating employees, and empowering them to make their own decisions [9].



Safety and health management is aided by the use of questionnaires about working conditions. The purpose of a questionnaire is to gather information from a predetermined sample of people. The management can compile statistics or gain a representative picture of working conditions in a firm or in areas of a company by using quantitative surveys. Face-to-face or group interviews are widely used to acquire qualitative estimates of individuals or groups of individuals.

Workers' psychosocial strain may be assessed using questionnaires and interviews, which are a key component of risk assessment. These tools can also be used to improve the company's safety culture. External consultants or specialists with methodological experience in psychology or social sciences should conduct the interviews since they demand such a high degree of knowledge.

The term "peer observation" refers to the practise of having coworkers monitor one other's behaviour at work. It is possible to discover weaknesses in the organisation of the workplace or to remedy poor work habits through observation. In this way, the worker receives constructive criticism from a coworker and gains valuable job experience. In risk assessments, near miss reporting systems, or to improve the company's safety culture, peer observations can be employed [10].

Programs involving mentors for young employees in a corporation are also well-known. In addition to psychological and medical assistance, peers may also be employed as support or contact individuals in the avoidance of psychological stress following work-related accidents.

### **Feedback Mechanisms Inside the body**

The so-called suggestion method is the most basic type of feedback system. However, it may also be utilised to build safe and healthy work practises in the workplace as part of the company's innovation cycle. A single suggestion system or a quality circle can be used to generate ideas. It is common for them to be supported by an incentive programme [11].

The company's safety and health management has built a particular type of internal feedback system known as a "near miss reporting system." The "iceberg model" is the theoretical framework for this system. Individuals and groups are often unaware of many potentially hazardous circumstances. However, each and every risky circumstance has the potential to lead to a workplace accident or contribute to the long-term health of the workers. It is deemed vital to become aware of harmful conditions and behaviours and begin the learning cycle in order to enhance occupational safety and health.

### **The Goals and Outcomes of the Involvement of Employees**

Workers' engagement in occupational safety and health management (OSH) is aimed at reducing workplace accidents and improving the health of workers. It is possible to summarise some of the targeted outcomes and consequences, as well as to conduct a more in-depth analysis of managerial motives.

One of the most important rights for employees, as well as their representatives, is to be well-educated about potential health and safety risks at work and how to avoid them through appropriate safety measures. In addition to the above considerations, employers and employees share a mutual interest in working together to reduce accidents and prevent work-related illness [12].

Second, the involvement of workers can be utilised to influence workplace behaviour or to mainstream preventative measures based on behaviour. It is seen to be the most important factor in increasing workers' acceptance of safety and health at work. There are several examples of this, such as personal protective gear. Workers are more likely to wear personal protection equipment (PPE) if they are involved in the selection process. Peer observations, interviews, and methods for reporting near-misses are some of the instruments used in programmes aimed at improving business safety culture [13].

Third, in order to conduct a risk assessment that takes into consideration workplace hazards and dangers to the best of its ability, employees may need to be directly involved. Experts in occupational safety and health (OSH) typically urge that workers be involved in the design and implementation of their workplaces. The workplace must interact with the worker's particular traits, cover the workforce in its variety, and identify psychosocial risk factors or psychosocial strain in the worker when there are dangers or risks.

## CONCLUSION

The involvement of workers in management processes is frequently viewed as a good method for motivating employees and strengthening the identification with the firm, as it promotes communication between management and workers respectively.. Models of transformative leadership, for example, make use of this phrase. Motivated employees produce better results than unmotivated ones, according to research. For additional details, see The role of excellent leadership in occupational safety and health for workers' compensation. The EPOC Survey, performed by Eurofound, found that employee engagement had a beneficial impact on the company's success. "Growth is more likely to be connected with highly innovative organisations that consult with their people than delegate duties," according to Eurofound. It was also shown that direct, one-on-one kinds of worker involvement have a greater impact on employment levels than other forms of participation. It has been shown that risk assessments in the workplace are most effective when carried out by teams with the participation of safety officials and employees. Companies with worker representation are more likely to conduct risk assessments, according to the EU-ESENER OSHA's study. Companies that include their employees in risk assessments are more likely to execute improvement measures.

## REFERENCES

1. González María C., Workers' Involvement at the Workplace and Job Quality in Europe, Working Papers on the Reconciliation of Work in Europe, REC-WP 08/2009, Dissemination and Dialogue Centre, University of Edinburgh, 2009. Available at: [http://www.socialpolicy.ed.ac.uk/recwowepudiac/working\\_papers/working\\_paper\\_08\\_09](http://www.socialpolicy.ed.ac.uk/recwowepudiac/working_papers/working_paper_08_09)
2. Arrigo, G., Casale, G., A Comparative Overview of Terms and Notions on Employee Participation. In: ILO (Ed.), Working document, No. 8, 2010. <http://www.ilo.org/labadmin/what/pubs/lang--en/doc> Name--WCMS\_123713/index.htm
3. Eurofound – European Foundation for the Improvement of Living and Working Conditions, Participation at work, 17 December 2007, retrieved 13 June 2011, from: <http://www.eurofound.europa.eu/areas/participationatwork/epoc.htm>
4. ILO - International Labour Organization, ILO Convention 155 concerning occupational safety and health and the working environment, 1981a. Available at: <http://www.ilo.org/ilolex/cgi-lex/single.pl?query=011981155@ref&chspeg=01>

5. ILO – International Labour Organisation, ILO Recommendation 164, Occupational safety and health recommendation, 1981b. Available at: <http://www.ilo.org/ilolex/cgi-lex/convde.pl?R164>
6. ILO – International Labour Organisation, ILO Recommendation 129, Communication within the undertaking, 1967. Available at: <http://www.ilo.org/ilolex/cgi-lex/convde.pl?R129>
7. Kohte W., Die Stärkung der Partizipation der Beschäftigten im betrieblichen Arbeitsschutz. Edition der Hans-Böckler-Stiftung 9. 2.Ed., 2005. Available at: [http://www.boeckler.de/show\\_product\\_hbs.html?productfile=HBS-003390.xml](http://www.boeckler.de/show_product_hbs.html?productfile=HBS-003390.xml)
8. EU-OSHA – European Agency for Safety and Health at Work, European Safety and Health Legislation, undated a, retrieved 13 June 2011, from <http://osha.europa.eu/en/legislation>
9. European Commission, Guidance on Risk Assessment at Work, 1996. Available at: <http://osha.europa.eu/en/topics/riskassessment/guidance.pdf>
10. EU-OSHA – European Agency for Safety and Health at Work, Workers' roles and responsibilities, undated b, retrieved 13 June 2011, from: [http://osha.europa.eu/en/topics/riskassessment/workers\\_role](http://osha.europa.eu/en/topics/riskassessment/workers_role)
11. Johannes, D., Qualitätszirkel, Gesundheitszirkel und andere Problemlösungsgruppen, Amtliche Mitteilungen der Bundesanstalt für Arbeitsschutz, May 1993.
12. Ozaki M., Trebilcock A., Forms of workers' participation. In: Encyclopaedia of occupational health and safety. ILO, 1998, Chapter 21.21
13. EU-OSHA – European Agency for Safety and Health at Work, Workforce diversity and risk assessment. Ensuring everyone is covered. 2009a. Available at: <http://osha.europa.eu/en/publications/reports/TE7809894ENC>

## HISTORICAL AND POLITICAL PROBLEMS OF THE FERGHANA VALLEY

**Rakhmonali Begalievich Bekmirzaev\***

\*Lecturer,  
Fergana State University,  
Fergana, UZBEKISTAN  
Email id: rakhmonali.b@gmail.com

**DOI: 10.5958/2278-4853.2022.00154.9**

---

### ABSTRACT

*This article analyzes the historical and political factors affecting interethnic relations in the Fergana Valley and assesses their role in regional security.*

**KEYWORDS:** *Central Asia's "Gunpowder Barrel" Fergana Valley, Interethnic Relations, Historical and Political Issues, Border Issues, Problems In Enclaves.*

---

### INTRODUCTION

In recent decades, Russian and foreign researchers have shown increasing interest in the Fergana Valley, considering it a "powder keg" of Central Asia and, perhaps, all neighboring states.

The Fergana Valley is a specific region of Central Asia not only due to its geographical location and natural features, but also due to the presence of a special culture and ethnic composition of the population. The territory of the valley is fenced by mountain ranges in the north, northeast and south. Such natural isolation was largely the reason for the formation of special economic activity in the region, in particular, trade caravans passed through the valley, a special social environment. Consequently, due to natural barriers, the valley was a relatively calm place compared to neighboring areas, and the standard of living was somewhat higher than in other regions, respectively, all this became the determining cause of migration processes.

### LEVEL OF STUDY OF THE SUBJECT

The historical and political problems of ethnic conflicts in the Fergana Valley can be attributed to the historical past of the peoples, the ill-conceived demarcation of borders during the formation of the Soviet Union, which does not take into account the national composition of the population, issues related to the existence of a particular nation in principle, the political crisis in the Central Asian republics after the collapse of the USSR and their independence, the problem of deported peoples.

First of all, it should be noted that the Fergana Valley has long been inhabited by a population of different ethnic composition. But at the same time, both Turkic-speaking and Iranian-speaking ethnic groups peacefully coexisted on its territory. Even after the entry of this territory into the Russian Empire in the 19th century, the borders for the movement of the population were open. But after the collapse of the empire and the formation of the USSR, mutual territorial claims began, which the center decided in a directive way, and when the Soviet state ceased to exist, the situation escalated. For example, the original territories of residence of ethnic Tajiks: Bukhara

and Samarkand, in the process of the formation of the USSR, were outside of Tajikistan. "On the territory of the former Emirate of Bukhara, the Bukhara Soviet People's Republic first appeared, and after the creation of the Uzbek Republic in 1925, the main part of Bukhara became part of it. Only in 1929 the high-mountainous part of Eastern Bukhara, where the Iranian-speaking population lived compactly, was separated from Uzbekistan and Tajikistan was formed. [1]

We observe a similar precedent of delimitation of borders between Kyrgyzstan and Uzbekistan, when in 1924 Osh and some other cities of Uzbekistan with a predominantly Uzbek population, respectively, were annexed to Kyrgyzstan, due to the lack of industrial centers in the southern part of the latter. And this led to the infamous events called "Osh Massacre" in 1990 and 2010.

However, at the time of the creation of the union republics, such a division was a way to combat pan-Turkism in Central Asia and contributed to the complete reorganization of the former statehood on the territory of the former Turkestan Governor-General. [2] Such a tactical move worked for a certain time, until the central government began to give up its positions on the territory of the entire Union.

Thus, the definition of the boundaries of Soviet Central Asia was carried out without taking into account the ethnic composition of the population living in this territory, economic and territorial unity was taken into account to a greater extent, and, often, was based on the personal preferences of the party elite, which to a greater extent increased the conflict potential of the region. .

After these states gained independence, the issue of determining the boundaries between sovereign entities again appeared on the agenda. At present, one of the most acute territorial disputes remains the unresolved problem of enclaves. So, at the moment there are several Uzbek enclaves on the territory of Kyrgyzstan - Dzhanly - aiyl, Sokh, Chon - Kara, Shakhimardan; the Kyrgyz enclave of Barak, ringed by the territory of the Uzbek Republic; the Tajik villages of Sarvan and Kairagach in Uzbekistan and the village of Vorukh in Kyrgyzstan. In most cases, conflicts in the enclaves are connected with the desire of the official authorities to establish their own rules, which "bumps" into the resistance of the local population. Conflicts on domestic grounds occur almost daily and often acquire a nationalist connotation. [3]

Thus, in January 2012, a conflict broke out over an attempt by the Kyrgyz side to install power transmission towers on the border with the Uzbek enclave of Sokh. It is noteworthy that, despite the formal belonging of this territory to Uzbekistan, the vast majority of the populations of Sokh are ethnic Tajiks. And this area on the map of the Tajik Republic is designated as part of the Tajik territory. However, Tajikistan does not make any claims to the Uzbek region. [4]

## **CONCLUSION**

Based on the foregoing, we can conclude that the causes of the cultural and political bloc are in no way inferior to the problems of a socio-economic order in terms of their conflict potential. If it is still possible to organize the three states of the Ferghana Valley to overcome economic difficulties by coordinated methods, since in the end the main goal will be profit and self-interest, then in matters of politics this is much more difficult to achieve. This is where the economic levers of pressure on neighbors will be used. In addition, internal problems and conflicts in a particular country directly affect the foreign policy of the state. For example, in the Civil War in Tajikistan in 1992-1997. Ethnic Uzbeks actively participated.

Accordingly, all this confirms the need for an integrated approach to the study of the causes of conflicts in the post-Soviet space, which was most clearly manifested in the states of the Ferghana Valley.

**REFERENCES:**

1. Bekmirzaev, R. B. (2021). Factors affecting nation-building relationships in Fergana Valley. *Asian Journal of Multidimensional Research*, 10 (11), 122-125.
2. Olimov , M. A. ., Olimova , S. K. Khujand: between Ferghana and Tajikistan // Bulletin Eurasia . -1998. - No. 1-2.
3. Bekmirzaev, R. B. (2021). Factors affecting nation-building relationships in Fergana Valley. *Asian Journal of Multidimensional Research*, 10 (11), 122-125.
4. Rudov, G. A. Ferghana Valley: causes of crisis phenomena and ways to neutralize them // Obozrevatel = Observer. - 2014. - No. 11.
5. Bekmirzaev, R. B. (2021). Traces of Archaic Religions in the Modern Way Of Life Of The Peoples Of The Ferghana Valley. *The American Journal of Social Science and Education Innovations*, 3 (11), 41-46.



## KHIVA MADRASAHs

**Khusanov S\***

\*Lecturer,  
Ferghana State University,  
Fergana City, UZBEKISTAN  
Email id: s.khusanov@mail.ru

**DOI: 10.5958/2278-4853.2022.00155.0**

---

### ABSTRACT

*The Khanate of Khiva occupies an important place in the history of Uzbek statehood. The spiritual and cultural life of the Khanate of Khiva, the education system, the order of its administration, the actual ranks, ranks and positions, madrasahs, their functions in educational and socio-economic life are becoming important objects of scientific research. These problems have been studied by scientists and researchers at different times. But there are many mysteries and problems in this direction.*

*This article examines the role of madrasahs in the system of religious administration and education in the Khanate of Khiva in the XIX – early XX centuries, which have a direct impact on the spiritual and cultural processes of the Khanate of Khiva.*

*Closely helps in covering the political, economic, social and cultural life of the Khanate of Khiva, religious and local government system.*

**KEYWORDS:** *Khiva Khanate, Madrasah, History, Cultural Heritage.*

---

### INTRODUCTION

In the Khanate of Khiva, the local Kungrat dynasty, which came to the top of the state at the beginning of the XIX century, pursued domestic and foreign policy in the interests of the population of the Khorezm oasis. Thanks to the policies and reforms of Muhammad Rahim Khan I (1806-1825), the central khan's power is being strengthened in this state. At the same time, the ruling dynasty pays special attention to Islamic law, the protection of Sharia and educational work. It is known that in Khiva madrasahs were an educational institution where the Islamic religion formed the ideological basis of government. At the same time, the mosques in Khiva were also the lowest in state administration, finance, military and soldiering. In the Khanate, the issues of taxes and zakat, khashar - "begor", conscription, participation in campaigns were carried out through the communities of mosques. It is known that madrasahs in Khiva play an important role in the training of qualified personnel for public administration, record keeping and document management. In addition, literate and educated in madrasahs have made a great contribution to the scientific and cultural life of the oasis. Those who were educated in madrasahs also enjoyed great respect among the nomadic peoples, Turkmens, Karakalpaks and Kazakhs, participated in the performance of religious rites and rituals, led them. Graduates of the madrasah were part of the highest religious class of the khanate. On the territory of the Khiva Khanate in the late XIX-early XX centuries there were 120 madrasahs, 63 madrasahs, 1,636 mosques, more than 200 mausoleums of "saints" and 25,500 ulama (eshon, mullah, Akhun, mufti, etc.). If we

rely on the data of 1909, there were 1,500 schools on the territory of the Khanate (they were under mosques), in which 45 thousand students studied[1].

## **MAIN PART**

Educational work in the Khanate was carried out exclusively by religious institutions. They were the single center of all spiritual life.

In the information of Abdullah Baltayev, one of the experts on the history of the Khiva Khanate, the names of 26 madrasas in the Khanate are indicated [2]. According to him, in the Khanate of Khiva in the XIX century, the following madrasas were popular: Arabkhan madrasah (founded in 1616 y.), Khujamberdi Madrasah (1688 y.), Shergozikhon Madrasah (1719 y.), Mukhammadamin Inok madrasah (1765 y.), Kozi Fozilbek Madrasah (1799 y.), Kutlumurod Madrasah, etc. (1809 y.), Arabkhona Madrasah (1810 y.), Polvon ota Madrasah (1810 y.), Allahkulikhan Madrasah (1835 y.) [3], Kuhi imorat Madrasah (1836 y.), Khojash Mahram Madrasah (1839 y.), Gadoy Niyazboy Madrasah (1840 y.), Yakub Mehtar Madrasah (1840 y.), Tour Madrasah (1841 y.), Mirza Tajik Madrasah (1842 y.), Rahimkulikhon Madrasah (1843 y.), Rahmonberdiboy Madrasah (1843 y.), Mukhammadaminhon Madrasah (1851 y.), Abdullahan Madrasah (1854 y.), Stone madrasah (1859 y.), Madrasah Amir tura (1870 y.), Madrasah Mukhammadrakhimkhan (1871 y.), Madrasah Otajon boy (1871 y.), Mukhammad Niyaz Devonbegi Madrasah (1872 y.), Mukhammad Murad Devonbegi Madrasah (1871 y.) [2], Tura Murad Madrasah (1871 y.).

In addition, in another document that we have, the following madrasas of the era of Mukhammad Rahim Khan II are listed:[6] Hazrat Pahlavon madrasah, Mazari Sharif Madrasah, Sayyid Ali Ruiyajon Madrasah, four Shahbaza Baba Madrasah, Nurullozbek Madrasah, Rofanak Madrasah, Otajon Tour Madrasah, Sayyid Homid Tour Madrasah, Musa Madrasah tour, madrasah Ibrahim Khoja, madrasah Islambuya, madrasah Sayyid Mukhammadkhan, madrasah Mukhammadrakhimkhan II in Mehtarab, madrasah Jumanberdi, madrasah Chubin, madrasah Mukhammad Yusuf Yasovul, madrasah Eshmurad Mirab, madrasah Karakuz, madrasah Sayyid Niezboy, madrasah Mukhammad Murodboy Bathon, Muhammad Murad devonbegi madrasah in Shokhimard, Mukhammad Rasulboy mirzabashi madrasah, Kadam yasovulbashi madrasah, Mamat Mahram Madrasah, Shah Qalandar Madrasah, Khozachi Madrasah, Tillaboy Madrasah, Abdurasulboy Madrasah[7].

According to the same document, about 3,300 students served in these madrasas: 122 imams, 120 imams, muezzin, again suvchi (meshkabchi) and hairdressers [8].

One of the largest madrasas in Khiva is a two-storey madrasa built in 1851 by Muhammad Amin Khan, consisting of 125 khojras. 260 students studied at the madrasah, and 35,325 acres of fertile land were provided to him [9].

The smallest madrasah in the city was built in 1888 by Boyjon Juvazchi for the education of his descendants and consisted of 4 hujras.

As soon as the madrasahs were completed, the khan or the madrasah-biy allocated them special Waqf lands, and all the property was sealed and legalized by the city judge.

The structure of the madrasah was peculiar, 2 or 3 students lived in each hujra. The doors of all hujras were built on the side of the courtyard of the madrasah, and an oven was installed in each

farm. The Taliban proved themselves well in comparison with the requirements of that time for living conditions.

The madrasah had the following duties and responsibilities:

Ohun / ohund (Arabic) – means preacher, orator, preacher of religion, mullah, teacher, teacher. There were a large number of Akhuns in large madrasahs. For example, 7 onov, 2 muezzins, 2 farros, 1 barber and meshkobchi served in Allakulikhan madrasah [10]. Mudarris and Akhuns received salaries from the foundation of the madrasah in which they taught. The madrasah also gave them khojra.

Mudarris (Arabic) is a madrasah teacher. During the period under study, the Mujtahids taught a certain subject of theology. Currently, in madrasahs and religious universities in the Middle East and Islamic states, those who teach not only religious, but also secular sciences are called sages [11].

Even in the madrasah of Khiva, mudarris were divided into adno, avsat and excellent qualities. The Mudarris received their salaries from the funds of the madrasah, their contributions were indicated in the waqfs as usual.

Mutavalli is a person who manages the property of the foundation on the part of the landlord. In many cases, he was the child of a waqif. An economic supervisor who deals with charitable foundations and economic affairs. Mutawalli foundation property, control, distribution, rental of property income, oxun, an official who pays salaries to the sages and employees of the institution. He did not interfere with academic work. The archives of the Khiva khans clearly show the activities of mutavalli on the lands of the Waqf[12].

Muazzin is a person who pronounces the azan in an institution and calls the community to prayer.

A cleaner is a person responsible for cleanliness in an institution. Having received a salary from the Waqf of the madrasah, he lived in one of his huts.

Barber – served mudarris, staff and students of the madrasah.

Mashkob is an employee who provides madrasah with water.

## **CONCLUSION**

In conclusion, it can be said that in the Khanate of Khiva, the ideological basis of government was the religion of Islam. Madrasahs were of great importance in the spiritual and cultural life of the state, as the laws acted in accordance with the orders and instructions of the shauriat.

In the Khanate, only religious institutions -madrasahs - were engaged in education and upbringing. They were considered a single center of universal spiritual life.

## **REFERENCES:**

1. Ўз Мда(Ҳозирда Миллий Архив), Ф-1009. Иш 9. 10 В
2. Болтаев А. Хоразм Тарихига Оид Хужжатлар // Қўлёзма, Ўзфаши №9320. 85-В
3. “Қўй Йили 1251/1835-36 Йилларда Ҳазратнинг Фармони Билан... Мадрасаи Олияким Хивақ Шаҳрида Воқеъдир... Анинг Таъмирикамоли Матонат Истеҳком Била Итмомга Етди. Ул Ҳазратнинг Фармони Била Анинг Ибтибойи Биносининг Баннойи Ва

- Корфармоси... Муҳаммадризо Қушбеги Эрди. У Вафот Топгандан Сўнг Отамурод Қушбеги Фармон Мужибии Била Корфармо Бўлиб, Итмомға Еткурди. Ул Мадрасаи Хонга Мавсумдир”. Огаҳий Муҳаммадризо Мироб Риёз Уд-Давлат. // Абу Райҳон Беруний Номидаги Ўзфаши, №821/11. 324а Вароқ.
4. “1289/1872-73 Йили Дор Ус-Салтанатининг Ичкари Қалъасида Арк Дарвозасининг Муқобаласида Бир Мадрасаи Иморат Қилдурдиким, Бу Мадраса Иморатнинг Иши Ўтган Йили Бошланиб Қиш Фасли Келгани Учун Нотамом Қолмиш Эрди., Ушбу Йил Итмомға Етди”. – Огаҳий. Шоҳид Ул-Иқбол. 2096-210а Вароқ.
  5. “Санаи Хижрия 1285/1868-69 Йилга Тахвил Топди. Ушбу Йил Ичинда Воқеа Бўлгон Воқеалардин Бири Улким, ... Муҳаммадмурод Девонбеги ... Хивак Шаҳрида ... Саййид Алоуддин Мақбарасининг Кунботар Жонубида... Мадрасаи Сангин Фарроҳбино Иморат Қилдурди”. – Огаҳий Гулшани Давлат. 243а Вароқ.
  6. Ўз Мда (Ҳозирда Миллий Архив), Ф-И-125 Рўйхат 1, Йиғмажилд 596. Иш 1. 15 В
  7. “Фирдавс Ул-Иқбол”Да Пиримхўжа Эшон Мадрасаси 1811 Йил Қуриб Битказилганлиги Ҳақида Маълумот Бор. Қаранг Мунис Ва Огаҳий “Фирдавс Ул-Иқбол”. / Табдил Кириш Ва Изоҳлар Муаллифлари Ш. Воҳидов, И. Бекжон, Н. Полвонов. Масъул Муҳаррир Ш. Воҳидов. – Тошкент. Янгиаср Авлоди, 2010. – Б.371.
  8. Ўз Мда(Ҳозирда Миллий Архив), Ф-И-125 Рўйхат 1, Йиғмажилд 596. Иш 1. 15 В
  9. Гулямов Я.Г. Памятники Города Хивы. // Труды Узбекистанского Филиала Ан Сссп. Серия I: История, Археология. Вып. Iii – Ташкент 1941-С40.
  10. Ўз Мда(Ҳозирда Миллий Архив), Ф-И-125 Рўйхат 1, Йиғмажилд 596. Иш 1. 8 В
  11. Чориев З.У. Тарихий Атамалар Изоҳли Луғати. – Тошкент. Академия. 2001. – Б. 78,79.
  12. Alimova, N. O. (2021). Some Views on the History of Daily Life Of Women In The Villages Of The Ferghana Valley (1946-1991). *The American Journal of Social Science and Education Innovations*, 3(07), 45-47.
  13. Yuldoshev, S. V. (2021). Pedagogical Analysis and Methodology of Children's Games. *The American Journal of Social Science and Education Innovations*, 3(11), 36-40.
  14. Valievich, Y. S. (2020). Children’s Games as an Important Factor in the Upbringing of a Harmonious Generation. *European Journal of Research and Reflection in Educational Sciences Vol*, 8(9).
  15. Bekmirzaev, R. B. (2021). Traces of Archaic Religions in the Modern Way of Life Of The Peoples Of The Ferghana Valley. *The American Journal of Social Science and Education Innovations*, 3(11), 41-46.
  16. Bekmirzaev, R. B. (2021). Factors Affecting Nation-Building Relationships In Fergana Valley. *Asian Journal Of Multidimensional Research*, 10(11), 122-125.
  17. Nizomiddinov, O. (2021). The Importance Of The Documents Of The Regional State Archive In The Research Of The History Of The Autonomy Of Turkestan. *The American Journal Of Social Science And Education Innovations*, 3(11), 53-57.

- 18.** Nizomiddinov, O. (2021). Establishment of A Single State Archive Fund In The Republic Of Turkistan (On The Example Of The Fergana Regional State Archive). *Asian Journal of Research In Social Sciences And Humanities*, 11(11), 822-825.
- 19.** Nizomiddinov, O., Tulqinjonov, S., &Mirzaeva, D. (2020). Issues of Spirituality in" Temur Tuzuklari". *Теорияипрактикасовременнойнауки*, (5), 44-46.
- 20.** Umarov, M. (2021). The Beginning of Religious Reforms in Independent Uzbekistan and The Changes Being Implemented. *Academicia: An International Multidisciplinary Research Journal*, 11(11), 477-481.
- 21.** Boltaboyev, M. (2020). History Of Religious Confessional Politics In The Soviet Period. *Theoretical & Applied Science*, (6), 668-671.
- 22.** Salmonov, A., &Boltaboev, M. (2021, August). The Consequences of the Soviet Government's Violent Policy towards Non-Muslims In Uzbekistan: <https://doi.org/10.47100/Conferences.V1i1.1251>. In *Research Support Center Conferences* (No. 18.05).
- 23.** Salmonov, A., &Boltaboev, M. (2021, June). The Consequences of the Soviet Government's Violent Policy towards Non-Muslims in Uzbekistan. In *Конференции*.
- 24.** Khusanov, S. (2021). Qozikhona and Religious Rule in Khiva Khanate in The Beginning Of Xix-Xx Centuries. *Asianjournalofmultidimensional Research*, 10(12), 758-763.

## PRIVATIZATION OF PUBLIC ENTERPRISES AND ITS IMPLICATIONS ON ECONOMIC POLICY AND DEVELOPMENT

**Dr Nayan Deep\***

\*Assistant Professor in Economics,  
S D Mahila Mahavidyalya Narwana,  
Haryana INDIA  
Email id: nayan.anurodh@gmail.com

**DOI: 10.5958/2278-4853.2022.00152.5**

---

### ABSTRACT

*Since 1951, the Central Public Sector Undertakings (CPSUs) have played an important role in India's economic growth. They were created with the goal of boosting the country's economy and ensuring its independence. When the first five CPSUs were established in 1951, they invested just 29 crores, which has now grown to 348 with a total investment of 16.4 trillion in 2018-19. They began to suffer losses and are now a financial burden on our GDP of roughly 0.16 percent (GDP). The new industrial strategy of 1991 marked the beginning of the government's shift away from investment and toward disinvestment. Since then, disinvestment policies have changed, and privatization's influence on the Indian economy has grown. "The Indian economy has been greatly impacted by privatisation. Revenues to the government dropped precipitously during Covid, and the primary approach for reviving the economy was privatisation. Some major businesses in the market may become monopolised through excessive privatisation.*

**KEYWORDS:** *Privatization, Economic Policies, Public Private Conversion.*

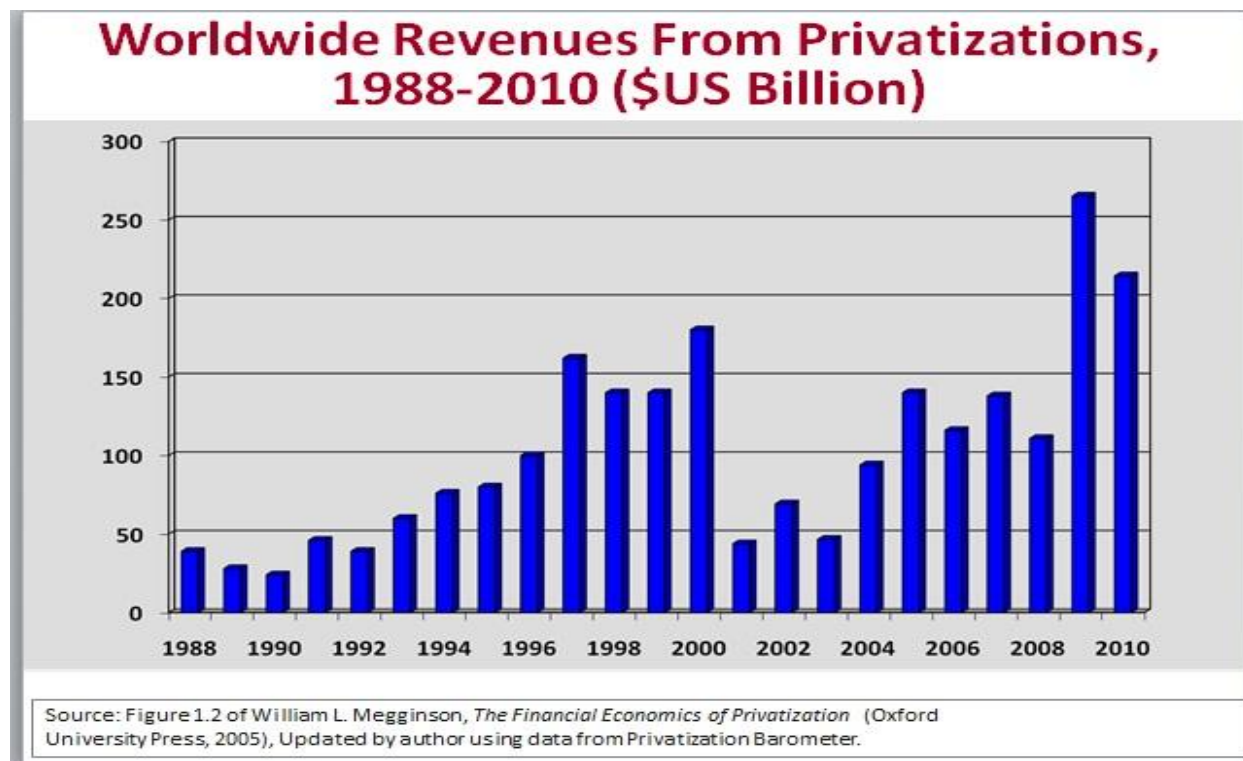
---

### INTRODUCTION

Government offices in India serve as an antidote to the corrupt institutions and officials that plague the country. The private sector, on the other hand, has grown exponentially during the past few decades. This leads to the idea that privatisation may significantly reduce corruption [1].

While this is true for government personnel, employees in the private sector are generally highly compensated for their role in maintaining a motivated workforce, which is why they refuse to accept the bribe. Bribes and other illicit activities are aggressively combated by private enterprises, who take prompt and stringent action. The spirit of competition among private sector businesses also contributes to an expansion in GDP, which is financed by the taxes that these businesses pay.





**Figure 1 : Revenues Analytics**

### **Relationship between Privatization and Corruption**

Both private and public organisations have been implicated in corruption. For a better understanding of how corruption affects those in positions of power rather than specific industries or sectors, look no further than the cases of Satyam, 2G, Common Wealth Games, Telgi, Bofors, and the Harshad Mehta Scandal, to name just a few. The largest frauds have often been perpetrated by both the private and public sectors working together [2, 3]. Private corporations have been known to pay hefty bribes to government officials in order to close lucrative commercial deals.

In the end, privatisation is not a guarantee of reduced corruption, as corruption has existed in the private sector as well. In reality, when the level of corruption in government is high, there is a greater concentration of the market and prices rise as a result [4].

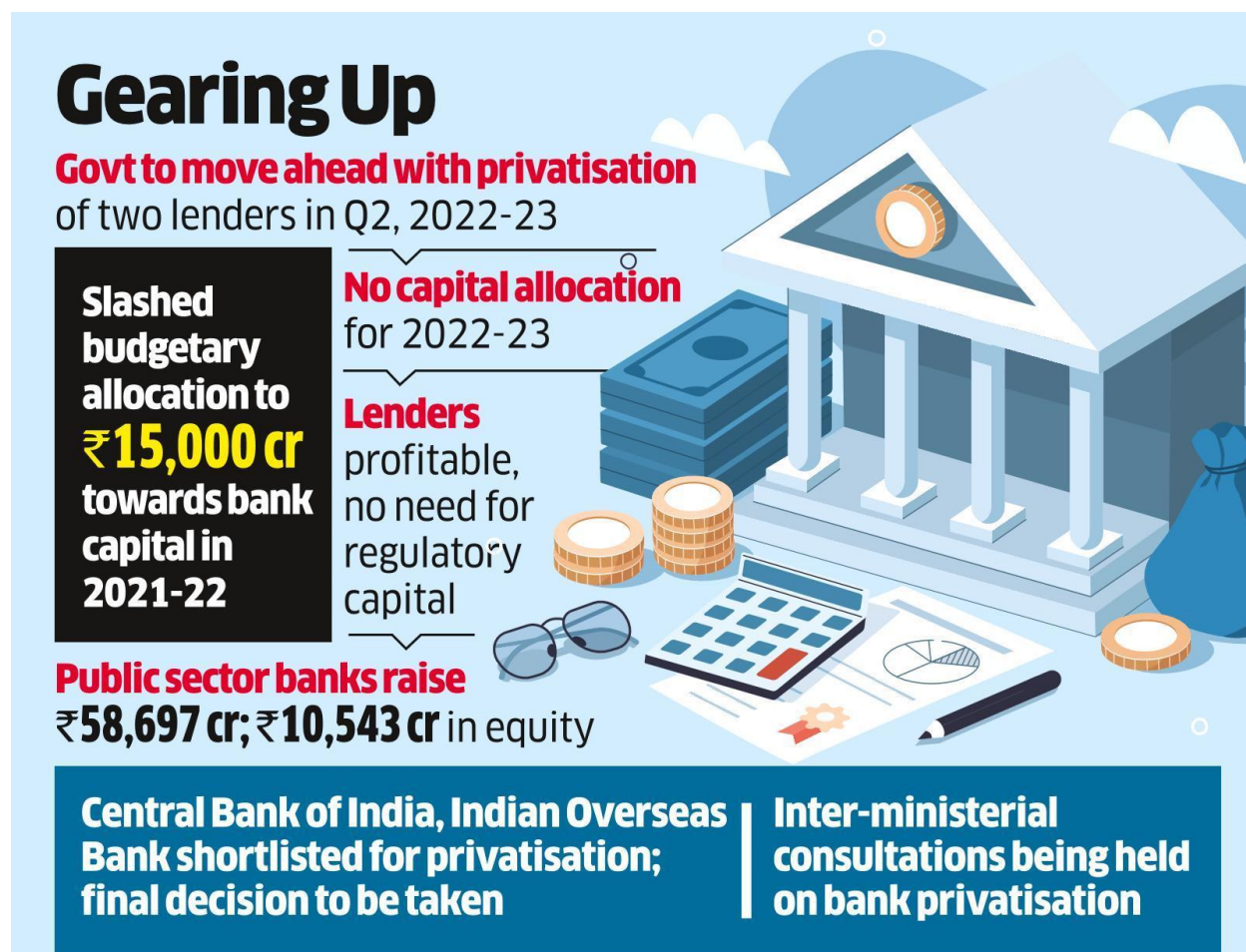
Because of the size and kind of assets being sold off, the process of privatisation can sometimes leave things more open to corruption. In some cases, privatisation can be used for political or personal advantage. If the state's assets are valued fairly for its taxpayers, then it's a win-win situation. High-value procurement initiatives make some industries, such as oil and gas, energy, mining, and transportation, more vulnerable to corruption and illicit activity. Consequently, it is imperative that the privatisation be done correctly, without resorting to arbitrary procedures, because the failure of the privatisation push might have far-reaching effects.

While privatisation may lessen corruption, it is not the most effective way to combat it. Finally, this idea has two sides to it. In spite of the findings of some academics that privatisation reduces corruption, some feel the opposite. Corruption in India may be curbed and prevented from spreading further if Privatization is used to its full potential.

Privatization is a synonym for the loss of government control. a change of control of a firm or a piece of real estate from the public to the private sector. The government is no longer the owner of the company or organisation. When a publicly listed corporation is taken control by a small group of individuals [5].

The creation of wealth is a result of privatisation. Profits are increased while production costs are minimised. Certainly, the government's decision to open a particular sector to competition is a positive one, since it will help both the market and the customer in the long run [6, 7].

To put it another way, it is primarily concerned with improving the quality of the services that people get. Furthermore, by assuming control of certain businesses, it lessens the financial strain on the government. There is no question that privatisation has had a significant influence on the world. There are advantages and disadvantages to living here, just as there are to flipping a coin [6].



**Figure 2 : Research Analytics on Privatization**

As a primary justification for privatisation, it is said that private businesses have a profit motivation to reduce costs and increase efficiency. You don't get a cut of the earnings if you work in a government-run industry. A private company, on the other hand, is more concerned with generating money, therefore it is more inclined to decrease expenses and become more efficient. Companies like BT and British Airways, which were privatised, are now more efficient and profitable than they were before.

Governments have a history of being bad economic managers. In the absence of strong economic and commercial judgement, they are acting on the basis of political pressure. An inefficient example of this is when a state-owned firm hires more personnel. It's possible that the administration is apprehensive of laying off workers because of the possible negative publicity that might result. As a result, inefficient workforces are common in state-owned businesses.

The next election is always on the minds of a government. This means that they may be reluctant to make long-term investments in infrastructure since they are more concerned with short-term initiatives that benefit the corporation, which is a serious worry for the public good. Front-line services like healthcare are more difficult to reduce from the public sector than from the private sector.

The creation of wealth is a result of privatisation. Profits are increased while production costs are minimised. Certainly, the government's decision to open a particular sector to competition is a positive one, since it will help both the market and the customer in the long run.

It has its drawbacks, too:

Privatization brings with it the potential for bribery and corruption, which should be taken into account. Privatized businesses are more likely to be opaque than public institutions, and this, along with a desire to make a profit, can foster corruption [8].

It is possible to claim that privatisation had a role in the rising inequality of the 1980s, if we focus our attention on the UK. In order to widen the wealth divide, the government was selling off public assets (which belonged to everyone) to a small but influential group. As a general rule, the richer end of the spectrum has benefited from better services, although this is not always the case for all utilities.

Water and rail firms, for example, have become private monopolies as a result of privatisation. These must be regulated to avoid monopolistic power from being abused. Government regulation is still required, just as it was under state control.

In addition, costs are rising, which is a disadvantage. Consumers have little option but to pay exorbitant costs since private proprietors sometimes enjoy a dominant position in the industry.

In addition, typical economic models of privatisation suggest that new private owners enhance productivity and lower costs, which might lead to job losses and salary decreases for workers. Increases in employment as a result of privatisation will have the opposite consequence of increasing output.

### **Benefits of Indian Economic Privatization**

- Privatization on a smaller scale increases efficiency, quality, variety, innovation, lowers costs and pricing — all of which result in higher profits for a company. High incentives, less government interference, strong competition, and reinvestment may all be added on top of this.
- Asset sales generated by privatisation can assist boost capitalisation at the macro level. It enhances the financial health of the government and creates more money, which leads to an increase in the entire economy. Overspending and borrowings are reined in, resulting in an increase in foreign investment and additional tax revenue.
- Privatization minimises public sector corruption and red-tapism at a societal level.

- In the private sector, businesses are more aware of their customers' needs and hence provide better customer service.
- The ownership of shares increases people' ability to participate in economic decision-making.
- Because of a decrease in state engagement, citizens have greater personal freedom.
- Cons of Privatization
- The critics argue that privatisation might lead to local monopolies, which they say is a problem. If utility monopolies are formed, their market power will be used to exploit customers' interests. Profits can be made by reducing output and raising pricing.
- Some cases of foreign acquisition of divested assets in developing nations have shown that the majority of their revenues have been taken out of the country. The economy may not gain in some cases, for many reasons.
- Additionally, some scholars contend that privatisation leads to greater levels of socioeconomic inequity. If wealth is concentrated in the hands of a small number of people, this might lead to widespread layoffs and cutbacks. The poor's situation might get worse as a result of this.
- In addition, critics claim that privatisation is a political ploy that may be utilised for clientelism. So, while corruption can be reduced, it cannot be eliminated.

In many emerging and transitioning economies during the last decade, privatisation has been a fundamental component of structural transformation. There are a variety of reasons why governments go through with privatisation, including boosting economic efficiency in light of the widespread existence of underperforming public enterprises in many countries, as well as improving the fiscal position, particularly in cases where governments are unwilling or unable to continue financing deficits in the public enterprise sector. In addition, governments with limited liquidity that are under budgetary pressure have at times privatised in order to use the earnings to finance deficits. The establishment of domestic capital markets has also been a goal.

Efforts like these have been examined extensively in the literature on the microeconomic implications of privatisation, which has focused on the possible efficiency advantages. However, there has been little empirical research on the fiscal and macroeconomic consequences of privatisation. 1 The World Bank has played a leading role in assisting on the design and execution of public enterprise reform, including divestment. However, privatisation has significant fiscal and macroeconomic ramifications, therefore the International Monetary Fund is also interested (IMF). As a matter of fact, privatisation is now a critical component of many countries' agendas.

The privatisation of nonfinancial public firms in emerging and transition countries is examined in this article in terms of fiscal and macroeconomic considerations. Two further sections of the study deal with the following: the effects of privatisation on the budget and macroeconomic variables, as well as IMF-supported projects' privatisation components, which include a privatisation component. For the empirical data, a variety of developing and transitional economy privatisation experiences and geographical diversity were considered while selecting the case study nations.

Privatization has brought in large sums of money for a number of countries in development or transition. The activities taken previous to the sale, the sales process, and the postprivatization regime all have an impact on the gross receipts that may be transferred to the budget. Extrabudgetary management and the huge disparity between gross and net collections have resulted in a shortfall in the budget's revenues. The following are some of the most important findings in relation to privatisation proceeds:

In the first instance, improper use of privatisation funds can result in a lack of oversight and accountability. Extrabudgetary funds should be subject to legislative control, with their accounts made public, audited, and subject to public disclosure.

On the other hand, it is imperative that all privatisation transactions be recorded on a gross basis. Restructuring, recapitalization, or debt cancellation costs for public enterprises should be recognised as spending funded by gross sales profits.

As a final point, privatisation involves a transfer of assets, and the revenues are lumpy, one-time, and unpredictable. As a result, the revenues of privatisation should be included in the government's budget as a source of funding.

### **How Privatization Proceeds Are Put to Use**

The consequences for the government's net wealth and the macroeconomic impact of privatisation proceeds should be considered when evaluating their prospective uses.

When it comes to the government's net wealth, privatisation earnings don't always mean it's in a better position. Government choices on how to spend the earnings should take into account the longer-term ramifications of privatisation, including revenues lost and/or future expenditures that will not be incurred. As private sector ownership leads to increased efficiency and the government shares in this benefit, the government's net value will rise [8].

According to the macroeconomic impacts of privatisation, it is important to consider the source of revenues, the degree of capital mobility, and the exchange regime. Like debt-financed fiscal expansions, privatization-financed fiscal expansions will have a wide-ranging impact on the economy. Capital inflows linked with privatisation are sterilised automatically if they are used to decrease foreign debt. Reducing the country's debt might have an effect on the country's liquidity.

The fungibility of resources must be taken into account when assessing governments' claimed plans for the use of privatisation revenues. The following are a few typical applications for this product:

**Increased Costs:** As a result, relying on privatisation proceeds for current expenses is not recommended. Targeted usage in order to mitigate the short-term effects of privatisation is a viable option. As long as there is no negative impact on the country's net worth as a result of greater capital investment, it is possible to use the revenues [9].

**Net Debt Reduction:** If you're looking to reduce your debt burden, you have two options: pay off existing debt or accumulate assets. Which option you choose depends on your debt management strategy. There are benefits such as preserving the government's net value and perhaps influencing the cost and availability of debt through positive signalling.



Receipts from privatisation projects might be set aside for certain purposes. This makes budgeting more challenging, as it makes it more difficult to respond to shifting conditions and priorities by reallocating money. The practise should be avoided as a result of this.

Taking a Break from the Budgetary Constraints: In the short term, the earnings of privatisation might provide a temporary buffer for governments engaged in harsh adjustment and reform efforts.

### **Privatization's Financial Effects**

The immediate impact of privatisation on the budget, as well as the long-term financial repercussions, may be seen. The econometric results show that privatisation proceeds are conserved rather than spent in the case study nations. Extrabudgetary treatment is not necessary for wise management, as evidenced by this finding, which applies to receipts funnelled via the budget. For the vast majority of nations surveyed, an IMF programme was in place, which may have had an impact on this outcome [10].

A smattering of data implies that privatisation has a long-term positive impact on the budgetary condition. It's clear from both the company level and aggregate statistics that privatisation has a favourable influence on revenue, as well as reductions in transfer payments and deficits in certain nations' consolidated public business accounts following periods of privatisation.

There is sometimes a lack of data on public enterprise operations and financial transfers between firms and the government (including quasi-financial flows). Many countries believe they could do better in this area.

### **Privatization's Effect on the Economy**

Microeconomic and case study data show the long-term growth and employment benefits of privatisation. In both the complete sample and transition nations, these findings hold true but are less apparent [11].

### **Growth**

According to microeconomic data, private businesses, particularly those in competitive industries, are more operationally efficient than state-owned ones. Privatization and economic growth are found to be closely linked in the case study countries. This suggests that privatisation may be a proxy for one or more variables that aren't being included, such as a positive shift in the regime, and this is in line with previous research on economic growth.

### **Human Resources**

Public firms frequently aim to sustain employment and take advantage of budgetary latitudes that allow them to do so. Concerns have been raised that privatisation might lead to more job losses. In spite of factual evidence to the contrary, certain workers may nevertheless be adversely affected by privatisation. As a result, reducing its societal impact is critical [12].

The World Bank leads privatisation, although the International Monetary Fund has worked closely with it. In recent years, the bulk of IMF-supported plans have incorporated some sort of conditionality on privatisation, based on the Bank's experience and recommendations.

Conditionality on process and objectives has been stressed in IMF-supported programme monitoring of privatisation. International Monetary Fund (IMF) policymakers have recently



placed a greater focus on privatisation procedures that have a significant fiscal and macroeconomic impact. When privatised enterprises are operating in an adequate regulatory context, programmes should pay more attention to this aspect.

Financial plans should be designed with the broadest feasible definition of privatisation receipts in the fiscal objectives and quantitative performance criteria, and macroeconomic consequences should be considered when assessing utilisation. Adjusters must deal with the uncertainty surrounding the total quantity of revenues; in general, receipts that are more than expected must be kept [13, 14].

There are a number of alternative meanings for the term privatisation, but the most prevalent one is that something is taken from the public sector and put into private hands. When a tightly regulated private corporation or industry becomes less controlled, the term is frequently used as a synonym for deregulation. "Franchising" or "out-sourcing" may also be used to describe the privatisation of government operations and services, in which private companies are given the responsibility of carrying out government programmes and services that had previously been the responsibility of state-run organisations. Revenue collection, law enforcement, water supply, and jail management are just a few examples [15].

A third definition is the sale of a state-owned firm or municipally-owned corporation to private investors; in this situation, shares may be traded in the public market for the first time or for the first time since the prior nationalisation of an entity. For example, a joint-stock firm can be formed through the demutualization of an organisation like a mutual organisation, cooperative, or public-private partnership.

On the other hand, "going private" is a synonym for "privatisation," which refers to the acquisition of a publicly listed company's whole stock by private equity investors. Shares are no longer traded on a public stock market following the purchase because the firm is now privately held.

## **CONCLUSION**

While privatisation might be used to achieve one goal, it can also have a number of unintended consequences. There is no assurance that privatisation in India would minimise corruption and function in the best interests of the Indian populace. Regardless of whether an organisation is private or public, corruption stems from an individual's mindset. However, we can eliminate corruption to some extent through privatisation. We need to find a method to implement privatisation of the Indian economy in the best possible way, since it will affect us in both positive and negative ways. There are quantitative and intangible long-term implications to this. There are a number of criteria that determine whether or not privatisation is a success or a failure. India's economy and policy are heavily influenced by the country's political leaders. Increasing competitiveness in the market is one of the benefits of privatisation. Privatization, if handled correctly, encourages greater efficiency and productivity.

## **REFERENCES**

1. Chowdhury, F. L. "Corrupt Bureaucracy and Privatisation of Tax Enforcement", 2006: Pathak Samabesh, Dhaka.
2. "Musselburgh Co-op in crisis as privatization bid fails". Co-operative News. 2005-11-01. Retrieved 2008-05-21.

3. Fernando, Jason. "Going Private Definition". Investopedia. Retrieved 2021-08-05.
4. Dumont, Marvin. "Why Do Public Companies Go Private?". Investopedia. Retrieved 2021-08-05.
5. Edwards, Ruth Dudley (1995). *The Pursuit of Reason: The Economist 1843–1993*. Harvard Business School Press. p. 946. ISBN 978-0-87584-608-8.
6. Compare Bel, Germà (2006). "Retrospectives: The Coining of 'Privatisation' and Germany's National Socialist Party". *Journal of Economic Perspectives*. 20 (3): 187–194. CiteSeerX 10.1.1.694.2842. doi:10.1257/jep.20.3.187. S2CID 33815402.
7. Kämmerer, Jörn Axel (2001). *Privatisierung: Typologie – Determinanten – Rechtspraxis – Folgen*. Mohr Siebeck Verlag. p. 7. ISBN 978-3-16-147515-3.
8. Beerman, Jack (2001-01-01). "Privatization and Political Accountability". *Fordham Urban Law Journal*. 28 (5): 1507.
9. Metzger, Gillian (2003-01-01). "Privatization as Delegation". *Colum. L. Rev.* 103 (6): 1367–1502. doi:10.2307/3593390. JSTOR 3593390.
10. *International Handbook on Privatization* by David Parker, David S. Saal
11. Li & Zheng 2001, p. 241
12. Bouye, Thomas M., *Manslaughter, markets, and moral economy*
13. Bel, Germà (2010-02-01). "Against the mainstream: Nazi privatization in 1930s Germany<sup>1</sup>" (PDF). *The Economic History Review*. 63 (1): 34–55. doi:10.1111/j.1468-0289.2009.00473.x. hdl:2445/11716. ISSN 1468-0289. S2CID 154486694.
14. Birrell, Ian (2013-08-15). "Forget the nostalgia for British Rail – our trains are better than ever". *The Guardian*.
15. "Great British Railways: The Williams-Shapps Plan for Rail" (PDF). *Assets.publishing.service.gov.uk*. Retrieved 5 March 2022.

## THE IMPORTANCE OF PHYSICAL EDUCATION AND SPORTS IN THE DEVELOPMENT OF SOCIETY

**Shavkat Abdurakhmonov\***

\*Lecturer,  
Fergana State University,  
Fergana, UZBEKISTAN  
Email id: abdurakhmonov.sh@mail.ru

**DOI: 10.5958/2278-4853.2022.00156.2**

---

### ABSTRACT

*One of the important tasks in the harmonious development of physical and intellectual resources of young people is the extensive use of the opportunities of the basics of physical culture, physical education and physical development. This article provides theoretical information on the basics of physical culture, physical education and physical development.*

*This article explores the relationship between physical education and sports.*

**KEYWORDS:** Culture, Physical Culture, Education, Physical Education, Ability, Sports, Physical Training, Coach.

---

### INTRODUCTION

The urgent task before us today is to create a unique way of life based on economic, social and political principles. It is understood that an important factor in determining sustainable development in all respects is a healthy lifestyle, a healthy lifestyle, as well as the expansion of the number of young people who regularly engage in sports. It should be noted that there is no doubt that a healthy and long life has always been a dream of mankind. In this regard, the main task of any society is to realize this dream of humanity, that is, to create conditions for the health and longevity of citizens.

Historically, the issue of education has been the most pressing issue in society, and today it is one of the main issues. Because the education of the members of the society is the decisive force in the whole existence of the society of its time, that is, its development, well-being, enlightenment and spirituality, economic stability, cooperation of the members of the society, peace in the world, joint solution of various problems is calculated. Physical culture, which is an integral part of such a unique system, has a unique role to play in ensuring the full development and activity of members of society. Taking this into account, special attention is paid to physical culture in our country.

### MAIN PART

In many countries around the world today, people are running to improve their health. Running for healing has now been tested, and folk wisdom has laid the groundwork for its use. It is no coincidence that less than 3,000 years ago on the Forum wall in Hellas (Greece) was written: "If you want to be strong - run, if you want to be beautiful - run, if you want to be smart - run." This is now confirmed by scientific research.

Knowing how to live and work is great enlightenment. Life honors quality, productive, meticulous performers. The proverb "If you work, you will enjoy" defines the demands of everyone's life. Today's market economy lives by established rules, which require theoretical knowledge, such as diligence and business acumen, proper rest, quick and good rest.

As a result of health training, the body not only increases strength, but also expands its thinking capabilities. Physical and mental maturity is endless, boundless, and giving it a slow or fast pace depends on everyone's aspiration, diligence, patience, will.

Sport training is a pedagogical phenomenon, a specialized process of physical education, directly aimed at achieving high sports results using a system of exercise techniques. It is important to note that from the point of view of pedagogy, sport is not a single goal, but a means of education, health and preparation for life.

Objectives of sports training: the requirements of health promotion and spiritual education, the harmonious development of the individual in all respects; mastering sports techniques and tactics; development of physical, mental and volitional qualities specific to the chosen sport, acquisition of practical and theoretical knowledge in the field of sports hygiene and self-control. During the training, not only high skills, but also health, development of physical qualities, hard work and acquisition of vital skills necessary for the defense of the Motherland are solved.

We have described one of the simplest means of fitness training to achieve physical fitness, a vital movement - a healthy lifestyle physical culture exercise that should be considered when using walking: simple walking is done by moving most of the muscles in the human body and it affects all internal organs. The positive effect was proven before the XV century. As a result of walking or other purposeful movements, the tissues in our body, the connections between the organs of our body are activated, the fluid in the myriad large and small tubes, and with them the interstitial exchange of substances, takes place rapidly; improves the supply of cells with nutrients and building materials needed to create new tissue; the valves of the tissues, which for some reason are closed, move the stagnant organs.

Walking is the simplest and most beneficial means of maintaining a healthy body. Walking as much as possible is beneficial for all ages, but it is better to get used to walking a lot from a young age.

Walking puts a load on most muscles of the human body because the whole body shakes when one leg is lifted and the body shifts its center of gravity. The longer such shakes last, the more the body's resistance to movement increases. The increased normative volume of mental and physical labor creates the basis for longevity. By studying the secret of the longevity of people who have seen longevity, it has been proven that they walk more in the open air than others, and are in constant motion. It is important to choose and adhere to the norm of physical activity of fitness training.

In addition, physical development is associated with the law of the unity of the organism and the environment and depends on the living conditions of a person, including the geographic environment. Therefore, when choosing the means and methods of physical education, it is necessary to take into account the influence of these laws.

Physical development is closely related to human health. Health acts as a leading factor that determines not only the harmonious development of a young person, but also the success of

mastering a profession, the fruitfulness of his future professional activity, which is the overall well-being.

As means of physical culture are used: physical exercises, natural forces of nature (sun, air and water, their hardening effect), hygiene factors (personal hygiene - daily routine, sleep hygiene, diet, work, body hygiene, sportswear, shoes, places of employment, rejection of bad habits). Their complex interaction provides the greatest health-improving and developmental effect.

Physical culture is the basis of the social and cultural life of an individual, a fundamental modification of his general and professional culture. As an integrated result of upbringing and vocational training, it manifests itself in a person's attitude to his health, physical capabilities and abilities, in his lifestyle and professional activity and appears in the unity of knowledge, beliefs, value orientations and in their practical implementation.

Physical culture acts as an integral quality of a personality, as a condition and prerequisite for effective educational and professional activity, as a generalized indicator of the professional culture of a future specialist and as a goal of self-development and self-improvement. Interests are also important in encouraging students to engage in physical culture and sports. They reflect the selective attitude of a person to an object that has significance and emotional attractiveness. When the level of awareness of interest is low, emotional attractiveness prevails. The higher this level, the more important is the objective significance. Interest reflects the needs of a person and the means of their satisfaction.

It should be implemented with the main directions of modernization of the system of physical education and improvement of physical fitness for young people in educational institutions, measures to improve the system of physical culture and sports for students, as well as recommendations to increase the effectiveness of compulsory physical education in education. To this end, the development of physical culture and sports in Uzbekistan is considered at the level of state policy and is used as a guaranteed means of strengthening the nation's gene pool, educating a generation of physical and intellectual potential and promoting national independence.

Only when physical education is based on a clear system can a pre-determined result be achieved. The system of physical education means the generality of the principles, means, methods and forms of organization of physical education in such a way that it corresponds to the goals and objectives of the rich and all-round harmonious development of a member of society.

It should be noted that the purpose of physical education in our country is to educate the people of Uzbekistan to be physically mature, active builders of the rule of law, ready for creative work and defense of the Motherland. "This goal is common to all organizations and institutions engaged in physical education in the country. The level of development of physical culture in society is assessed by the following indicators:

The degree to which members of society incorporate physical culture into their daily lives;

- Health and physical fitness of members of society;
- Material and technical support of physical culture classes and their quality;
- With a permanent staff (staff), qualifications and activity and ability of the staff in charge of physical culture;

-evaluated by the results of community members in sports.

Physical perfection is interpreted differently as a concept that has its own ideal classification for any historical period that changes historically, because this ideal reflects the economic conditions of the population, the worldview of social life. Physically fit is a historically formed perception of the norm of health and the level of comprehensive physical fitness, which optimally meets the requirements of longevity of labor, public, military and human creative activities.

Physical maturity has a clear meaning and social significance in the harmonious development of the individual. It has been proven in practice that activities performed only to achieve physical maturity lead to one-sidedness during the pedagogical process.

One of the most important tasks of informatization of education is the formation of an information culture of the specialist, the level of which is determined primarily by knowledge of information, information processes, models and technologies;

Second, the ability to apply the tools and methods of information processing and analysis in various activities;

Third, the ability to use modern information technology in professional (educational) activities;

Fourth, to see the environment as an open information system;

The use of modern information technologies in the education system in the educational process includes computer modeling of educational activities aimed at computer modeling, information, programming of educational activities, associative method, test method, active learning game method, project methods, "non-surrender tasks", situational modeling and others.

Teaching information computer technology is not just a transfer link between teacher and educator: changing teaching methods leads to a change in the content of learning activities, which is increasingly independent and creative, helping to implement an individual approach to education.

The sharp decline in computer hardware and software development has contributed to the introduction of technologies such as multimedia technologies, Internet technologies, web design into the educational process. Their proper use contributes to the complex development of a person's personality and abilities.

The sharp decline in computer hardware and software development has contributed to the introduction of technologies such as multimedia technologies, Internet technologies, web design into the educational process. Knowledge of modern information technologies, their skillful use creates real opportunities for the training of specialists with a completely new content, which has not been used before in the educational process.

The content of the main components of information training should be designed to serve as a basis for the formation of an information culture of the physical education and sports specialist in the future. At the same time, the specificity of the field of future professional activity should be reflected in the solution of certain practical problems in the laboratory and practical training.

## **CONCLUSION**

Ensuring the required level of information culture of the specialist cannot be the goal of a single training discipline; It is necessary to introduce modern information technologies in the teaching



of all special disciplines of specialized departments, which requires a high level of professional training of professors and teachers, acquaintance with the potential of these technologies, the ability to use these opportunities in practical and scientific activities. In short, future physical education professionals (students) should see in their own experience the advantages and opportunities of modern information technology in practice, in the process of training, conducting research, and so on.

#### REFERENCES:

1. N.A.Muslimov, M.H.Usmonboeva, D.M.Sayfurov, A.B.To'raev. Innovative Educational Technologies. Tashkent, Sano Standard Publishing House, 2015.
2. R.Hamdammov, U.Begimkulov, N.Tayloqov. Information Technology In Education. Textbook. Tashkent, 2010
3. J.Eshnazarov. History and Management Of Physical Culture. Tashkent, 2008.
4. Bobojonov, N. N. (2021, August). Pedagogical Problems of Forming a Sense of Loyalty To The National Army In Students. In *Archive of Conferences* (Pp. 104-109).
5. Bobojonov, N., & Madoripov, O. Bo'Lajak Mutaxassislarining Kasbiy-Amaliy Jismoniy Tayyorgarligi. *Студенческий Вестник Учредители: Общество С Ограниченной Ответственностью "Интернаука"*, 74-75.
6. Goynazarov, G. (2022). Development of Movement Qualities in Children. *European International Journal of Multidisciplinary Research and Management Studies*, 2(04), 42-47.
7. Soliev, F., Makhmutaliev, A., & Goynazarov, G. (2021). Ways To Effectively Solve Modern Educational Problems Using Art Technologies On The Basis Of Collaborative Pedagogy. *Scientific Progress*, 2(8), 276-280.
8. Yuldashov, I., & Goynazarov, G. (2021). A Need to Improve the Institutional System For Increasing The Social Activity Of Young People At The Stage Of Development. *Интернаука*, (12-3), 18-19.
9. Abdurakhmonov, S. K. (2021). The Importance of a Healthy Lifestyle In Achieving Physical Perfection. *The American Journal of Applied Sciences*, 3(03), 42-47.
10. Парпиев, О., Абдурахмонов, Ш., & Файратжон, Ф. (2022). Жисмоний Тарбиялаш Жараёнида Ёшларнинг Харакат Сифатларини Тарбиялашнинг Аҳамиятли Жихатлари. *Central Asian Research Journal for Interdisciplinary Studies (Carjis)*, 2(Special Issue 3), 103-108.
11. Юлдашов, И., Парпиев, О., & Абдурахмонов, Ш. (2022). Жисмоний Тарбия Таълимида Спорт Ифодаси. *Central Asian Research Journal for Interdisciplinary Studies (Carjis)*, 2(Special Issue 2), 222-225.
12. Yuldashev, I. A. (2020). Pedagogical Bases of Formation of Social Activity In Pedagogical Sciences. *Теория И Практика Современной Науки*, (5), 67-69.
13. Yuldashev, I., & Toshboltaeva, N. I. (2020). Analysis of Personality Traits In Athlete Activities. In *Психологическое Здоровье Населения Как Важный Фактор Обеспечения Процветания Общества* (Pp. 72-74).

## FORMS OF ORGANIZATION OF EDUCATIONAL ACTIVITIES IN HISTORY IN HIGHER EDUCATIONAL INSTITUTIONS

**Gulnoza Karimova\***

\*Lecturer,  
Lutfillo Makhamadaliyev, student,  
Fergana State University,  
Fergana City, UZBEKISTAN  
Email id: g.karimova@gmail.com

**DOI: 10.5958/2278-4853.2022.00157.4**

---

### ABSTRACT

*Currently, modern teaching methods are widely used in the educational process. The use of modern teaching methods leads to the achievement of high efficiency in the learning process. When choosing teaching methods, the choice is considered appropriate, based on the didactic task of each lesson.*

*This article discusses the forms of organization of educational activities in history in higher educational institutions.*

**KEYWORDS:** Education, Innovation, Historical Science, Pedagogical Skills, Pedagogical Technology.

---

### INTRODUCTION

A modern teacher who is able to freely use all the advantages of information and communication technologies when teaching a subject outside of his specialty, practically confidently applying these technologies to students and students, believes that existing innovations in science and technology require intensive inclusion in the content of curricula and textbooks, thereby creating the basis for the formation of modern knowledge of students. The introduction of modern teaching technologies and various methodological approaches, in turn, creates favorable conditions for the relatively easy and durable formation of a large amount of fundamental information among students.

While preserving the traditional form of the lesson, enriching it with methods that activate the activities of diverse students leads to an increase in the level of assimilation by students. To do this, it is necessary to rationally organize the lesson process, constantly stimulate the interest of students and their activity in the educational process by the teacher, break the educational material into smaller fragments and use such techniques as brainstorming, working in small groups, discussion, problem situation, reference text, project, role-playing games, etc. when revealing their content. it is required to motivate students to independently perform practical exercises.

### MAIN PART

As you know, the education system is a social mechanism for the constant transfer of accumulated knowledge to subsequent generations. With the help of this mechanism, the formation of the personality in society is ensured and predetermined, because without the

transfer of accumulating and developing knowledge, neither society nor the individual can develop [1].

Educating young people in the spirit of patriotism and respect for our national values, protection from various ills and threats, increasing the effectiveness of propaganda work is one of the pressing problems of today.

The information sphere is a constantly expanding area of human activity associated with the production of new information products, services and technologies [2]. Today, the information sphere includes not only research and information centers, networks, libraries and archives, but also office systems, mass media, educational, electoral and information technologies, which generally form the industry of creating, storing, processing and distributing information in all areas of human activity[3].

This is also confirmed by the trend of formation of the information society – a society whose members interact with each other and with the environment mainly through highly specialized communication channels, the purpose of which is data transmission.

In today's globalized world, the issue of upbringing a harmoniously developed spiritually enlightened person is becoming more and more urgent. In turn, the process of globalization affects human spirituality. The process of globalization is mainly characterized by the development of international economic relations, information technology and science and technology. Globalization imposes new requirements on the rapid development of production and the training of appropriate personnel. This is due to the fact that the development of the economy is inextricably linked with the training of qualified personnel.

The rapid development of Information Technology and globalization processes are setting new tasks in the areas of human factor, education, new pedagogical technology. In fact, more than a hundred years ago, the knowledge that a person received in the process of education was enough for his whole life. Because the exchange of Information, its update has been very slow[4]. The development of Information Communication Technology has also led to the fact that educational programs become obsolete in the short term[5]. Their creation should be in proportion to the newly formed professions and specialties. In conclusion, it is worth noting that the role of each parent in the integration of the idea of national independence into the younger generation is also very important. It is necessary for parents to realize how important their children are in preschool education, their spiritual development, this period is an important stage of continuous education and upbringing. It will be desirable to achieve a consistent adaptation of the family to the system of educational institutions.

The lesson is the main organizational form of educational work, in which the teacher is engaged strictly according to a schedule with a permanent composition of students within a clearly defined lesson, guided by collective cognitive activity, using a variety of techniques to achieve didactic and educational tasks that he sets before the curriculum. Lesson special forms of the educational process are an important factor in improving the effectiveness of the lesson.

One of the most important conditions for the implementation of educational and educational tasks assigned to historical science is that it is advisable to start teaching history only after the role of the history course taught in each class, its educational tasks, each chapter and topics in them, and even more educational, are clearly defined in advance. educational and developmental tasks of the subject that takes place in each lesson.

The successful implementation of the goals and objectives of teaching in historical education primarily depends on the ability of the teacher to clearly and correctly define the educational tasks of each lesson in advance. This, in turn, depends on the level of thorough theoretical knowledge and skills of the teacher to correctly set the educational tasks of the lesson and methods of their solution.

The lesson as the main link of the educational process occupies an important place in teaching young people the basics of science. The didactic requirements for a history lesson are: scientific, historicity, methodicality, visibility, the possibility of students' cognition and age-related psychological characteristics, continuity and continuity, the connection of history in the context of time and space, education and upbringing that it has a purpose[6].

When preparing for each lesson, it is provided that the state educational standards and curriculum are indicated in the cover letter. When preparing and conducting a lesson, it is necessary to prepare the teacher for each subject of the curriculum in its own subject, preparation for each lesson. In preparation for each individual lesson, the teacher conducts the following work:

- Specify goals and objectives based on the topic;
- Highlights the content of the educational material and develops it didactically (highlights the leading concept, patterns, factual and practical information);
- Assumes a connection with the previously studied, the logic of content placement;
- Determines the nature of educational and cognitive activity of students, that is, thinks over what skills and abilities will be formed, what is the relationship between reproductive and research activities, independent work and the role of a teacher.
- Defines the form, tool, methods and techniques of the lesson;
- Teaching methods: selects and defines tasks, exercises, problem questions, tasks.
- Develops and plans the lesson process.

It is also necessary to be able to clearly and effectively conduct a well-prepared lesson, again in an organized manner. At the same time, the following rules should be observed:

- 1) Start the lesson clearly and in an organized manner, and for this everything must be prepared for the lesson in advance;
- 2) Know the attention of students to the content of the lesson and support it throughout the lesson, activating the cognitive activity of students.
- 3) Rational use of time in the classroom;
- 4) Observation of one's own behavior. High spirituality, morality and culture, the manner of speaking and demanding, encouraging, addressing students-all this determines the style of the teacher's activity, and also excludes strenuous work or extreme emotional excitability of students.
- 5) The conditions under which the demonstration of entrepreneurship takes place in the lesson must be taken into account when changing the conditions of the lesson.

The purpose of teaching history in every history lesson and in extracurricular activities is to ensure the harmony of education and upbringing [7]. Important concepts that form the basis of the scientific worldview are assimilated by students gradually, over the course of several lessons, new concepts are concretized and supplemented with new content based on the material of the next lesson [8]. The next lesson expands the knowledge acquired by students in previous lessons, skills, forms new concepts in them. Students are becoming more and more aware of historical processes.

The lesson is a collective form of learning, which has such features as a permanent composition of students, a clearly defined pre-arranged schedule of classes and the organization of educational work on one specific topic. During the training sessions, the foundation is laid for students to master the basics of the knowledge being studied, to form the necessary knowledge, skills and abilities.

- Knowledge – assimilation, systematization and consolidation in memory of concepts and ideas about laws, laws, phenomena, facts of the environment, as well as about the methods of activity
- Skill-the ability of trainees to successfully perform their actions in the process of work, using methods of action that is appropriate in certain conditions
- Qualification-the ability of trainees to accurately, quickly and purposefully automatically perform their actions in the process of work.

The educational and educational significance of the visibility of history teaching is also great. First of all, the visual aid serves as an important source of students' knowledge. Even when the teacher's statement is always complete, students' ideas about events will be incomplete. Also, without the use of ornaments, it is impossible to imagine a complete, accurate and deep picture of the studied period.

Visual aids help to clarify the historical imagination of students and clarify these ideas. Visual images reveal not only the appearance of historical facts and phenomena, but also their inner essence. Visual aids help students to understand complex historical phenomena, the meaning of historical concepts more easily.

Visual aids contribute to the formation of students' historical ideas, their theoretical generalization and generalization, a better understanding of the results, objective patterns of social development, relationships, and also serve as an important means of aesthetic education of students.

## **CONCLUSION**

Thus, the importance of visibility is not limited to the statement with the participation of the organs of vision of historical facts, phenomena and the formation of a clear idea of them, it also facilitates the understanding of complex historical phenomena, concepts, contributes to a truthful understanding of history.

## **REFERENCES:**

1. Короткова М. В., Студеникин М.Т. Методика Обучения Истории В Схемах Таблицах Описаниях. Практическое Пособие Для Учителей. – М., 1997.
2. Сагдиев А., Фузайлова Г., Хасанова М. Тарих Ўқитиш Методикаси. – Тошкент: Тдпу, 2008.

3. Тошпўлатов Т., Гаффоров Я. Тарих Ўқитиш Методикаси. (Бакалаврият Йўналишидаги Талабалар Учун Ўқув Қўлланма). – Тошкент: Ўзму. 2002. – 65 Б.
4. Karimov, U., Kaxarov, S., Yokubjonov, S., & Ziyodov, D. (2018). Using New Information Technologies In Distance Learning System. In *Новая Промышленная Революция В Зеркале Современной Науки* (Рр. 9-11).
5. Abdurakhmonova, M. M., Ugli Mirzayev, M. A., Karimov, U. U., & Karimova, G. Y. (2021). Information Culture And Ethical Education In The Globalization Century. *The American Journal Of Social Science And Education Innovations*, 3(03), 384-388.
6. Karimov, U., & Abdurakhmon, A. (2017). Innovative Information Technology In Education. *Форум Молодых Ученых*, (5), 9-12.
7. Karimov, U., & Ergasheva, D. (2020). Educational Issues In The Period Of Amir Temur And Temurids. *Теория И Практика Современной Науки*, (5), 18-20.
8. Karimov, U., & Kasimov, I. (2018). The Importance Of Modern Information Technologies In Development Of Distance Education. In *Перспективные Информационные Технологии (Пит 2018)* (Рр. 1186-1187).
9. Каримов, У. У. (2017). Роль Средств Массовой Информации В Процессе Глобализации. In *Перспективные Информационные Технологии (Пит 2017)* (Рр. 1189-1192).
10. Тургунбаев, Т. А., & Каримов, Ў. У. (2020). Хамма Нарса-Фронт Учун, Хамма Нарса-Галаба Учун!(Иккинчи Жаҳон Урушида Қозонилган Галабанинг 75 Йиллигига Бағишланади). *Интернаука*, (19-4), 52-53.
11. Каримов, У., Хакимова, Д., & Халилов, Л. (2018). Информационное И Коммуникационное Технологии Влияние На Образование В Техническом Обслуживание. *Мировая Наука*, (10), 193-197.
12. Каримов, У., & Каримова, Г. (2018). Геополитическая Конкуренция В Информационном Пространстве. In *Перспективные Информационные Технологии (Пит 2018)* (Рр. 1368-1372).
13. Каримов, У., Хакимова, Д., & Тулкинов, З. (2018). Задачи Построения Гражданского Общества. *Теория И Практика Современной Науки*, (10), 193-195.
14. Каримов, У. (2017). Инфокомтехнологии (Икт) Формирование Духовных Характеристик Личности. In *Перспективные Информационные Технологии (Пит 2017)* (Рр. 1160-1163).
15. Karimov, U. U., & Karimova, G. Y. (2021). The Importance Of Innovative Technologies In Achieving Educational Effectiveness. *Журнал Естественных Наук*, 1(1).
16. Каримов, Ў., & Каримова, Г. (2021). Ахборот Оқими Ва Ахборот Маданиятининг Шаклланиш Тенденциялари. *Scientific Progress*, 2(3), 743-750.
17. Umaralievich, K. U. Spiritual Education Of Students Of Pedagogical Universities On The Basis Of Cultural And Humanistic Approach.
18. Karimov, U. U. (2021). Scientific And Theoretical Foundations Of The Formation Of The Social Environment In The Family. *Oriental Journal Of Social Sciences*, 37-40.



19. Rayimov, A. A., & Karimova, G. Y. (2021). Social Aspects Of The Formation Of Social Activity In Youth. *Oriental Journal Of Social Sciences*, 29-32.
20. Usmanov, N., Ganiev, B. S., & Karimova, G. Y. (2021). The Philosophical Basis For The Formation Of Spiritual Maturity Among Young People. *Oriental Journal Of Social Sciences*, 33-37.
21. Рафикова, Д. К., & Каримова, Г. Й. (2020). Ёшларни Ижтимоий Фаоллигини Оширишда Қадриятларнинг Аҳамияти. *Перекрёсток Культуры*, 2(1).
22. Bozarov, D. M., & Karimova, G. Y. (2021). Role Of The Self-Organization Model In Complex Social Systems. *Oriental Journal Of Social Sciences*, 1-9.
23. Каримова, Г., Акбарова, М., Акрамжонов, К., & Йўлдашева, Г. (2021). Жамият Ижтимоий Тараққиётида Инновацион Технологияларнинг Аҳамияти. *Интернаука*, (10-3), 42-43.
24. Abdurakhmonova, M., Karimova, G., & Karimova, M. (2021). Role Of Ethical Culture In Preventing Violence Among Spupils. *Интернаука*, (11-2), 50-51.
25. Abdumalikov, A. A. (2019). Environmental Ecological Policy In Uzbekistan And Necessity Of Formation Of Rational Communication To Nature. *Scientific Bulletin Of Namangan State University*, 1(9), 94-101.
26. Khakimovich, K. N., & Abdullazhanovich, A. A. (2021). Joint International Educational Program As An Important Form Of Training Bachelors In The Conditions Of A New Stage Of Development.
27. Абдумаликов, А. А. (2017). Формирование Информационной Культуры Молодежи. *Theoretical & Applied Science*, (11), 277-280.
28. Abdumalikov, A. A. (2017). Formation Of Youth Information Culture. *Isj Theoretical & Applied Science*, 11(55), 277-280.
29. Абдумаликов, А. А. (2020). Violation Of Contradictioons Between Society And Nature As A Global Civilization. *Scientific Bulletin Of Namangan State University*, 2(4), 218-224.
30. Абдумаликов, А. А. (2019). Human And Natural Harmony In The Historical Process. *Scientific Bulletin Of Namangan State University*, 1(5), 205-209.

## POST DEMONETIZATION IMPACT ON ECONOMY OF INDIA

**Dr Nayan Deep\***

\*Assistant Professor in Economics,  
S D Mahila Mahavidyalya Narwana,  
Haryana INDIA  
Email id: nayan.anurodh@gmail.com

**DOI: 10.5958/2278-4853.2022.00153.7**

---

### ABSTRACT

*Demonetization in India will be five years old on November 8, 2021. It was on this day in 2016, at 8 p.m., when Prime Minister Narendra Modi announced that the 500- and 1000-rupee notes — which together constituted 86% of the money in circulation — would no longer be considered legal tender in India. According to its initial stated goals, the policy of demonetization was meant to encourage the use of digital payments. A major promise of demonetisation was that hoarders of cash would be obliged to deposit it in the banks as a result of the currency being demonetized. According to the Prime Minister's announcement of the policy, "Which honest person would not be saddened by news of crores of currency notes secreted beneath the mattresses of government officers? Or by stories of money recovered in "gunny sacks"?". People who possessed unexplained cash were expected to either disclose it to the tax authorities or get rid of it. Demonstration has been regarded as a "surgical blow" against corruption by many.*

**KEYWORDS:** *Demonetization, Impact of Note Ban of Economy.*

---

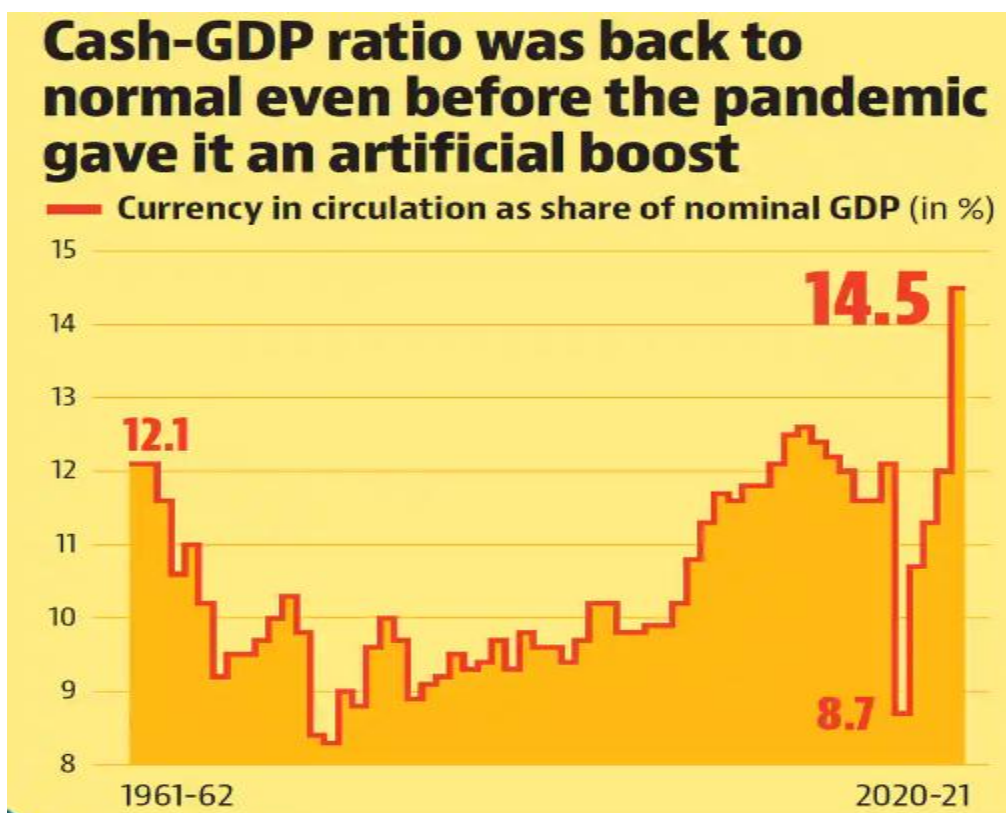
### INTRODUCTION

Corruption is closely related to the amount of money in circulation. The use of money obtained through unethical means only serves to exacerbate inflation. As a result, the poor are forced to suffer the brunt of it. There is an immediate impact on the purchasing power of those who are less fortunate. If you've ever purchased property or a house, you know that a considerable sum of cash is required in addition to the check payment. An honest person's ability to purchase property is hindered by this. Prime Minister Narendra Modi's Nov. 8 address cited a rise in the cost of goods and services including homes, land, higher education, and health care as a result of the abuse of currency [1].

The research analytics provided an in-depth look at these figures on February 2, 2017. "The total amount deposited under these two categories may be estimated by multiplying the number of accounts with the average deposit amounts stated by Jaitley. This offers a total of Rs5.48 lakh crores for deposits under Rs80 lakh, and Rs4.89 lakh crores for deposits beyond Rs80 lakh. A total of Rs10.38 lakh crore has been deposited in these two categories. There was around 15.44 lakh crore in money that was demonetized, and this works out to almost two-thirds of that amount. Individual deposits of Rs80 lakh or more have accounted for 31% of the entire amount of demonetised money, according to these estimates. This data shows that the super-rich have re-deposited a considerable portion of the demonetised cash, according to the report [2].

Those hopes (and possible flames) were quickly smothered. As soon as Arun Jaitley delivered his post-demonetisation budget address on February 2, 2017, he offered the first indication that there had been no large-scale cleanup of unauthorised currency deposits. Post-demonetisation, a detailed picture emerges from the early examination of depositors' old-currency savings. 1.09 million accounts were opened between November 8 and December 30 with deposits of between Rs2 lakh and Rs80 lakh, with an average deposit amount of Rs5.03 lakh. According to the Budget Address, more over 80 lakh deposits were made in 1.48 lakh accounts with an average amount of Rs3.31 crores.

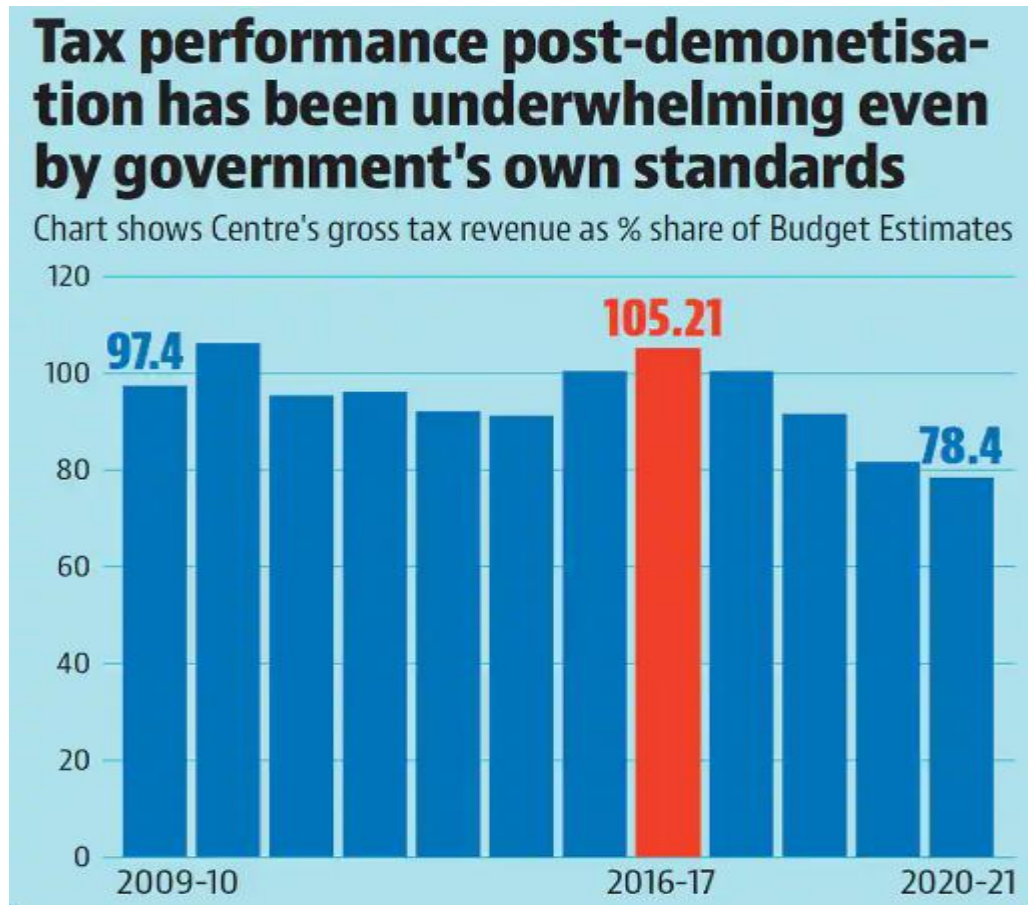
Although the initial policy statement did talk about lowering the quantity of cash in circulation in the Indian economy, many individuals now describe demonetisation as a nudge toward digital payments [3].



**Figure 1 : Cash GDP Ratio**

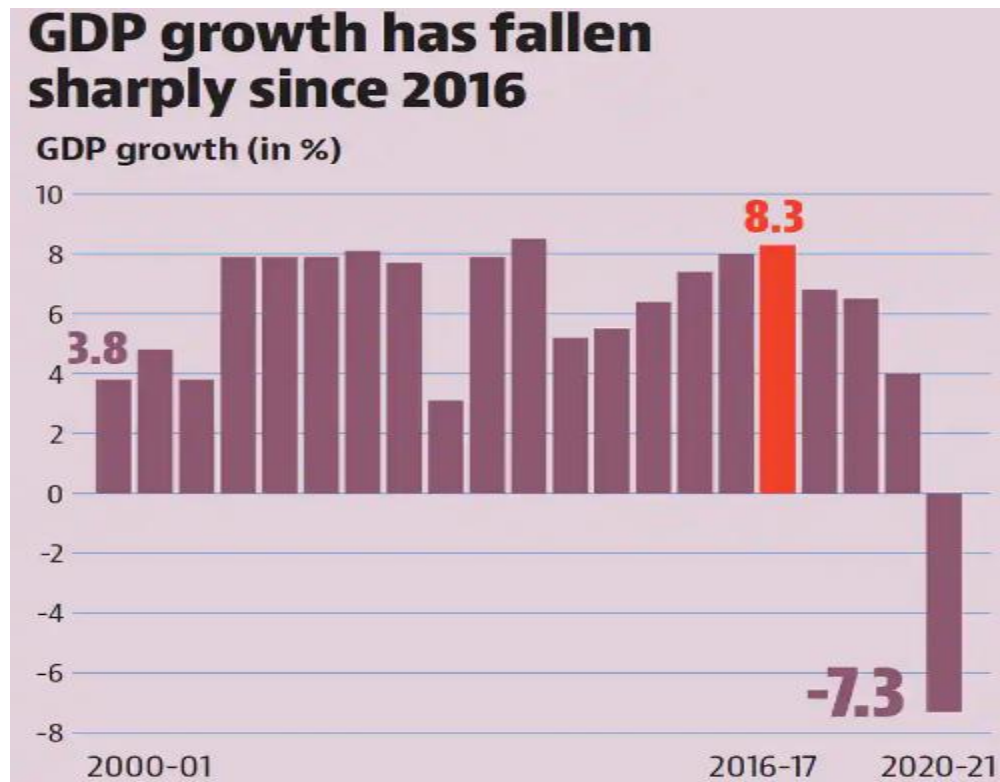
It's unclear whether or not India has become a cashless economy after demonetisation, despite the fact that digital payments have expanded dramatically since that time (more on this later). When determining this, the most appropriate indicator to use is the nominal GDP to currency in circulation ratio (at the conclusion of a fiscal year) (in that fiscal year). Before demonetisation, currency in circulation accounted for 12.1% of nominal GDP in India.

In 2016-17, it fell to 8.7 percent as the banking system struggled to replenish the economy's cash supply following demonetisation. It has continuously risen since then, reaching a peak of 12 percent in 2019-20. If the nominal GDP ratio is restored to its pre-demonetisation level, then there was no substantial impact on the economy until 2019-20.



**Figure 2 : Tax Performance Aspects**

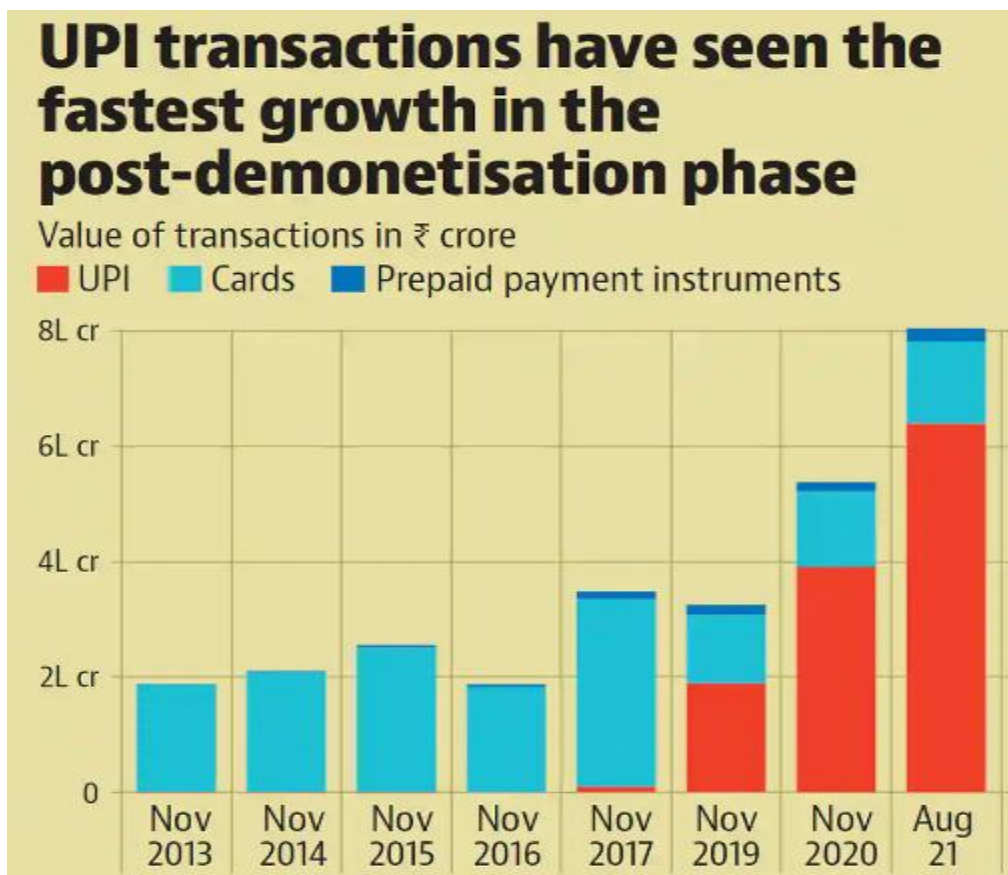
In 2020-21, this percentage hit an all-time high of 14.5 percent. As a result of the pandemic's economic disruption, India's nominal GDP shrank by 3% in 2020-21, which drove up the cash-GDP ratio, rather than an abrupt increase in cash preference in the Indian economy [3].



**Figure 3 : Status of GDP**

This is a trickier one to answer than the one about the cashless economy. Due to the fact that tax receipts in India have been hurt by more than just demonetization. In July 2017, the Goods and Services Tax went into effect. Due to a substantial cut in Corporation Tax rates, direct taxes fell by more than half in September 2019. A substantial drop in GDP and tax receipts was caused by the epidemic while economic watchers awaited long-term impacts of the corporation tax reduction. There are a number of qualifiers that need to be taken into account when looking at the government's total tax collection in relation to its budgeted objectives, which are a good indicator of whether the government's own expectations concerning tax collection have been met [4].





**Figure 4 : UPI Transactions**

Demonetization occurred twice earlier in India's history. For starters, a year and a half before India's Independence Day, on January 12th, 1946, all denominations of the Rs. 1000, Rs. 5000, and Rs. 10000 were removed from circulation. In 1938, the Reserve Bank of India (RBI) released the Rs. 10000 note, which was the biggest denomination note ever printed by the RBI in India. But in 1954, the Rs 1000, Rs 5000, and Rs 10000 notes were all brought back. When an edict was issued on January 16th, 1978, to phase out notes of Rs. 1000, Rs. 5000, and Rs. 10000, the second phase of demonetization was completed. It was decided to demonetize currency on January 12th, 1946, but the Direct Tax Enquiry Committee noted in its interim report that Demonetization was not effective since only a small percentage of the total currency in circulation was demonetized in 1946 and its value was Rs. 1,235.93 crores. High-denomination banknotes were demonetized on January 16th, 1978. As of that day, Rs. 146 crore had been demonetized and Rs. 125 crore had been surrendered to the Reserve Bank of India as of August 1981.

Demonetization has both positive and negative effects:-

'Black Money' or 'Dirty Money,' is money that is not taxed and is not reported to the government during the country's tax assessment period, causing the government to lose income. The government's demonetizations measures are said to assist reduce the amount of black money in the country. Removing black money from the economy will also have the added benefit of reducing corruption [5].



SBI Research, the Reserve Bank of India As of March 2016, the public has Rs. 9926 billion worth of high-denomination notes, as seen in the table. The table shows three possible outcomes. There is an assumption that 50% of the higher denomination notes do not return to the system in scenarios 1 and 2. Banks, post offices, and the RBI should be able to swap 60% of the Rs. 500 notes and 40% of the Rs. 1000 notes by March 31, 2017. Such estimations suggest that almost Rs. 4.5 lakh crore of money might be lost from the system.

In the current state of affairs, counterfeit/fake cash is completely removed from circulation. Due to a cash crisis in the country, GDP declines as a result of a decrease in currency circulation. Consumption demand might be reduced as a result of this action, which could have an impact on GDP. There may not be much of a negative impact on GDP by deferring part of the current demand till the cash situation improves [6-8].

Inflation is lower because of increased market liquidity. There is less liquidity and less cash movement in the market because of demonetization, which lowers inflation. If you remove all of your black money, you'll see a decrease in the money supply. In the absence of any open market actions by the Reserve Bank of India, this will lower the inflation rate. Four forms of inflation exist.

Demonetization has had an impact on the buying power of citizens. Property, vehicles, and the cement and steel industries are all examples of long-term investment assets that are particularly vulnerable. These sectors' stock values will have a negative effect. Customers' purchasing power is also impacted by the lack of money because 90% of all transactions in the Indian economy are done in cash [9].

### **The Real Estate Sector:**

In the wake of demonetization, the real estate market was shattered, with a decrease of more than 50% expected to last for the next 5 to 6 months. Despite the short-term impact, experts believe that lower interest rates in the near future will lead to an increase in house sale.

Banks and other financial institutions will be affected:

Banks will see both good and bad repercussions from demonetization. In the long run, though, it will be a favourable outcome. People are required to deposit their money in banks in accordance with government directives, which will boost the banks' liquidity in the near term. Banks can use this liquidity for long-term lending.

Banks are projected to expand the borrowing cycle by lending money at a cheaper interest rate as their liquidity improves. This will have an adverse effect on bank profits for the next two to three quarters, though. The lending book may never be seen. The demonetization procedure will lead to a rise in the number of bank branches.

Banks are able to borrow money at Repo and lend money at Base Rate, which lowers the lending rate. When the Repo Rate falls, the Base Rate follows suit, resulting in lower lending rates for banks with ample funds to lend [10].

Demonetization's impact on Ecommerce is largely negative, although there are some positives as well. In the first few weeks after demonetization, the gross merchandise value (GMV) of participants in the online retail business decreased by 40 to 50 percent. Things might stay gloomy until the end of March. Even high-end electronics like high-end smartphones are seeing a decline in popularity. Returns have increased by 50%. As a result, analysts believe that

consumer mood will not recover rapidly. Even though digital payments saw a 100% increase in transactions, the industry is optimistic about its long-term prospects. In addition, supermarket and food delivery businesses are performing better since they sell necessities. Some companies witnessed a 25 percent increase in new client orders, compared to the normal 15-16 percent [11-15].

The tourist industry has been particularly hard damaged by the current financial crisis. Banks and ATMs are notoriously tough places to get cash from. It's a rough moment for the travel and hotel businesses.

November and December are the busiest months of the year for tourists. Business may be reduced by as much as 40% for tourist locations outside of major cities. The city's tourism industry might see a 10% drop. At airports and hotels, cash shortages are a major issue. Many access points to national monuments do not accept card payments. Cash Liquidity in India has been warned about by Western countries. Demonetization will have a favourable influence on digital transactions and other ways of payment, which the government wants to eliminate.

Alternative modes of payment will experience an increase in demand as the number of cash transactions declines. E-wallets, online banking, plastic money (debit and credit cards), UPI, EFTPOS, Net Banking Aadhar cards, and other digital transaction methods will all experience significant rises in demand in the near future. Finally, it should lead to the reinforcement of these systems and their corresponding infrastructures

## **CONCLUSION**

In the long term, demonetization has both beneficial and bad effects, but the negative effects do not exceed the favourable ones. Pharma, FMCG, Education, Agriculture, Hospitals, Energy, and Telecommunications were not harmed by the demonetization. The long-term outlook for the banking and infrastructure sectors would benefit from this action.

For real estate, consumer durables, and high-end things in the near to medium term this would be bad news. There can be no doubt that the Modi government has taken a historic step by implementing demonetization, and this should be applauded by everyone. As a long-term strategy, this action by the government is a stepping stone to/for continued economic growth.

## **REFERENCES**

1. Care Ratings professional risk opinion "Impact of demonetization on GDP" Nov.18, 2016
2. Sukanta Sarkar. The parallel economy in India: Causes, impacts & government initiatives. *Economic Journal of Developmental*, 2010; 11-12(1-2):124-134.
3. <http://www.brandsacademyindia.com/blog/impact-of-demonetization-on-different-sectors-of-society/>.
4. <http://indianexpress.com/article/india/india-news-india/india-has-demonetised-high-value-currency-before-in-1978-4364851>.
5. <http://www.indiaspend.com/special-reports/india-demonetizes-currency-after-36-years-75606>
6. <http://www.financialexpress.com/economy/history-of-demonetisation-when-morarji-desai-government-ceased-rs-500-rs-1000-and-rs->
7. <http://marketrealist.com/2016/11/can-demonetization-impact-indian-economy/>

- 8.** "How Successful was Demonetisation? Four Takeaways From the RBI's Annual Report". The Wire. 30 August 2018. 13 October 2018.
- 9.** Padmanabhan, Vishnu (3 September 2018). "From GDP growth to black money, costs outweigh benefits of demonetisation". Mint. 20 October 2018.
- 10.** "Only 1.2% of ₹1,000 notes not returned to banks: RBI report". The Hindu. 30 August 2017. 26 February 2018 – via [www.thehindu.com](http://www.thehindu.com).
- 11.** "Has demonetization really boosted income tax collections?" 23 May 2017.
- 12.** "Did Demonetization Increase Tax Base? Not Really".
- 13.** Sharma, Tanisha (25 September 2018). "Did cash ban help raise tax base? ITRs rising, but not tax collection". The Economic Times.
- 14.** "Demonetisation impact: Greater Hyderabad Municipal Corporation collects over Rs 160 crore in just four days". India.com. 15 November 2016.
- 15.** "Was the boost in digital payments after demonetization temporary?". 26 April 2018.

## DEVELOPMENT AND PRACTICAL APPLICATION OF ACMEOLOGICAL TECHNOLOGIES OF STUDENT ASSESSMENT DIAGNOSE

**Khaitov Hamza Ahmadovich\*; Sharopova Gulnigor Bahriddinovna\*\***

\*Associate Professor,  
f.f.f.d. (PhD),  
Bukhara State Pedagogical Institute,  
Bukhara, UZBEKISTAN

\*\*Master Student,  
Bukhara State Pedagogical Institute  
Bukhara, UZBEKISTAN  
Email id: khaitov.h@gmail.com

**DOI: 10.5958/2278-4853.2022.00158.6**

---

### ABSTRACT

*In this article, the types and their classification according to the forms and stages of organization of acmeological diagnosis of primary school students' mastery level are expressed. The article also contains suggestions and scientific recommendations on this issue.*

**KEYWORDS:** *Analytical And Expert Diagnosis, Simulation Modeling, Heterochrony And Discreteness, Forecasting, Longitudinal Diagnosis, Diagnostic Examination, Questionnaire, Interview, Test Methods, Conceptual And Information Model, Local Perditral, Conceptualization.*

---

### INTRODUCTION

The criteria for evaluating students' knowledge, skills, and abilities has always been a controversial topic. Therefore, it is covered differently in different literature. However, it is possible to generalize the existing views and say that the criteria for evaluating students' knowledge, skills and qualifications are determined by the goals and objectives of each subject. Also, in the development of assessment criteria, students' oral answers, skills and qualifications are approached separately, as well as based on the mastery level of students in the class (group).

According to the forms and stages of organizing acmeological diagnosis of primary school students, the following groups of diagnosis are divided into: analytical diagnosis, expert diagnosis and model-based diagnosis.

Analytical diagnosis means statistical information, functional economic, legal, as well as press materials, artistic and scientific literature, archival materials and it is understood to carry out the diagnostic process on the basis of others. Analytical diagnosis is also called indirect diagnosis, because different questions and answers and questionnaires are not used here.

Expert diagnosis means getting information about a problem, situation with the help of expert survey and expert methods. This type of diagnosis is called a questionnaire, which uses the methods of questionnaires, interviews, and tests.

Model diagnosis refers to simulation modeling. Although its capabilities are limited for diagnosis, modeling of diagnostic processes is carried out before conceptualization of the problem object, its forecasting, design, programming. Among them, the systematic approach is of particular importance. It has the following features:

- Any event should be considered as a whole system;
- Diagnosing the intended level of development (in our case, the level of mastery) and revealing it using the processes of solving problem situations;
- Analysis of the main internal connections of the object being diagnosed;
- Determination of the orientation and organizational structure of the identified object;

At the same time, the diagnosis expands over time and the cultural process is observed. It is considered as a transition from one social and cultural situation, and the cycles of the implementation of the set goals are divided in this case. The cultural process and its cyclicity arise from the formation of different aspects at different times. (i.e. heterochrony and discreteness). Diagnostics includes testing in a fragmented and time-extended manner.

Diagnostic tests can be defined as structural because they provide a cross-section of individual aspects of the process or cross-section of several of its components. The structure also determines the relationships between the individual aspects of the cross-sectional diagnostic process. Based on them, it is now possible to create theoretical models.

Latitude is systematic in its diagnostic nature, because organizational management applies the study of the use of the set in terms of time. It determines the important relations of the studied object, both inside and outside, and different directions of development. The long-term system of creating simulation models of diagnosis includes experimental tools. It is possible to show forecasting and its methods in diagnosis: extrapolation of processes to achieve the goal. predicting the probability of correctness of the chosen ways and means, predictive modeling. The general requirements seen in all types of diagnosis are that they characterize decision-making in uncertainty methods. Therefore, it is very important for diagnosticians to use the method of missing observations, to objectively study the events, to raise questions and make decisions with a reasonable consideration of hypotheses.

There is also an experimental method for diagnosis, but it requires serious methodological, organizational, financial, and personnel efforts. Therefore, in our uncertain crisis period, experiments are carried out in very few cases. At each of the listed stages of diagnosis, certain parameters of the object are introduced; the section of individual sides of the object is less than given. A picture of the overall systemic phenomenon is given, complete parameters are given. Its practical result is directly related to the level of diagnosis:

Low- in cross-section of individual component.

In the case of high-system diagnosis.

The latter allows to determine the function of individual aspects of the organizational management process. It presents a particular phenomenon as a whole and this process as a function of development. In this approach, a full map of the relationship between the individual components of the object and its relationship with other objects is established. Systematic level of diagnosis of different levels of diagnostic examiner is known. It only performs certain

functions that are limited enough to achieve goals. Therefore, it should not be forgotten that it is necessary to strive for a complex organization of research. Therefore, the choice of diagnostic level depends only on the results of the study. In one case, a one-dimensional diagnosis is needed in a complex problem situation, in the second case, a long study of the effectiveness of the process is needed, and in the third case, there is a need to realize the development trend in advance, that is, it is necessary to develop methods of predictive diagnosis. It is impossible to imagine the diagnosis without monitoring, it is important that the process and results of the diagnosis are both scientifically and practically modeled. In the simplest way, the process of monitoring and communications means the analysis and assessment of their changes, monitoring, and forecasting of these changes with the constant organization of information. Systematic recording of empirical data and the quality of analysis requires that the information base is equipped as technologically and electronically as possible.

As we mentioned above, the task of monitoring is to quickly control the progress of the socio-cultural process and to determine changes in the state of the object.

More complex tasks of the monitoring service:

- Measuring the spatio-temporal, cyclic and other characteristics of the studied processes;
- Distinguishing various factors affecting the essential characteristics of the studied process;
- Measuring the environmental processes of the researched processes;

In order to solve these tasks, it is necessary to develop the research conceptually and methodologically. Because the study of dynamic processes requires a close theory and methodology, a separate methodological science is needed to measure these processes. (not only quantitative, but also qualitative indicators) measuring the boundaries of the process, separating the classes and variables of the indicators of quantities in terms of many objects and time (in dynamics), the directions of the process according to their spatial characteristics measuring changes (vectors and trajectories), measuring various properties of processes, etc.

Among the latter, researchers include ergodiagnosics, which cannot be studied without taking into account the ergodicity of the process (social memory), the properties of which reflect the nature of the influence of the past on the present and future state of the phenomenon. How can this ergodicity be measured?

Monitoring is notoriously labor-intensive and high-cost accuracy makes it unreachable for diagnosis. Therefore, longitudinal, comparative, regression, and panel studies are presented for the diagnostic monitoring and reporting function. The function of ergodicity, the construction and diagnosis of the cultural-historical image of the object can be solved by the mandatory methodological principle of historicity and the principle of cultural inheritance. However, monitoring systems are necessary for diagnosing global problems. For example, in environmental problems, the factor of timely detection during process changes is very necessary, in addition, self-adjusting, deep processes are not subject to management intervention, monitoring here plays the role of homeostatic feedback. does. In order to determine the characteristics of monitoring, which are hereditary (stable) non-stop (permanent) and how to characterize the object in other cases, it is very necessary to classify the typology of all its structures and process classification.



In acmeology, the creation of monitoring is limited to complex natural phenomena, the complexity of which does not allow direct and adequate quantitative measurement. That is why it is necessary to return to aggregating to integrable indicators. Even in environmental monitoring, it is one of the complex stages of technologically equipped and methodically developed modeling of anthropogenic processes. Human interaction with nature is at the local territorial level. It should be explained that the conceptual and information model of monitoring differs significantly in tasks and contents of interregional federal level monitoring. To build a federal diagnostic system of the monitoring service, first of all, it is necessary to deeply develop the local information field, because there are many levels of subordination on it. Hierarchy and from independent indicators to the diagnostic indicators of the federal monitoring coordination center are adjusted on it. The diagnostic theoretical model of the local periditral level should be seen in such basic theoretical systems as the way of life and the social organization of the underprivileged, disaffected special areas: micro-social, socio-cultural totality, personal development and their situations. The primary problem at the regional level is the socio-cultural identification of the "contract land", its self-determination, from which a whole complex of problems (historical social, ethnic, political, organizational management, etc.) follows the processes of socio-cultural identification of the region. . The theoretical aspect of interregional diagnosis is to obtain a typologically different image of the regions, the licenses based on the separation of regions with different meanings, the political analysis of the processes of cultural development in the regions, the construction of regional behavior models, etc.

The dichotomous principle of diagnostic evaluation allows to observe the process of change for better or for worse, determines the basic state of the object and organizes it for each case; institutional organization, orderly state, crisis, disintegration, re-transformation, order of state, and "gradual" grade (high, medium, low). The subject of diagnosis is the study of the mechanisms and factors that determine the process of object change.

#### **REFERENCES:**

1. Hayitov H. A. Qushlarga Ibrat-Hazrati Xizr! //Интернаука. – 2020. – №. 12-3. – С. 72-73.
2. Hayitov Hamza Ahmadovich. "Sharq Mumtoz Adabiyotida Ohang Talqini." *Мироваянаука* 8 (2019): 3-5.
3. Hayitov Hamza Ahmadovich. "Literary Influence And Artistic Image." *Экономикаисоциум* 8 (2019): 11-14.
4. Ahmadovich Hayitov Hamza. "Expression Of Folklorisms In The Works Of Ghafurghulam." *European Journal Of Life Safety And Stability (2660-9630)* 14 (2022): 101-105.
5. Хаитов, Хамза. "Адабиётда кулгидан фойдаланиш аниқлашнинг асослари." *Общество и инновации* 2.3/S (2021): 49-52.
6. Akhmadov A. A., Orziyev M.Z. The second world war and the unopened afghan front. //Scientific reports of Bukhara State University. –2020. No. 3. –С. 243-249.

7. Ahmadjon Asroro'g'liAhmadovAfg'onistonvaBuxoroamirligidiplomatikaloqalari (XVIII-XIXasrlar)//Scientific reports of Bukhara State University. –2029. No. 2. –С. 226.
8. Аҳмадов Аҳмаджон Асрор ўғли. Бухоро амирлиги ва Афғонистон дипломатик ва элчилик алоқалари ва Россия империяси ҳукуматининг таъсири// Journal of Advanced Research and Stability SSN: 2181-2608  
www.<https://sciencebox.uz/index.php/jars/article/view/1401>
9. Каримова Ф.М. Оловмагияси, кул-оловтотеми, шомонликнингкул-оловгадоирталқинлари.// ТаълимваривожланишТаҳлилионлайнилмийжурнал 2 (1), 227-230.
10. Каримова Ф.М. Оловкультиинингэтнографикхусусиятлариҳақида.// Developmentandinnovationsinscience 1 (1), 149-154.
11. KarimovaF.M. Xalqlirikqo'shiqlaridaolovningramziy-timsoliyma'nolari.//Международный журнал искусство слова 4 (2).

## DRAWINGS ON THE POETRY OF USMON NOSIR

**Sabirdinov Akbar Gofurovich\***

\*Doctor of Philological Sciences,  
Fergana State University,  
Fergana, UZBEKISTAN  
Email id: sabirdinov.a@gmail.com

**DOI: 10.5958/2278-4853.2022.00161.6**

---

### ABSTRACT

*The article covers the importance of the works of the sensitive poet and epics, playwright and translator Usman Nasir in Uzbek literature. The artistic features of his poetry are analyzed.*

**KEYWORDS:** *Poet, Epic, Translator, Period Of Repression, Uzbek Literature, Image, Style, XX Century, Literature.*

---

### INTRODUCTION

The 20th century took its place on the pages of history with two world wars, revolutions and coups d'état, the massacres of repression. He is also distinguished by the fact that he supplied such bright stars of our literature as Abdurauf Fitrat, Abdulhamid Chulpon, Gafur Gulom, Oybek, Maksud Sheikhzoda, Hamid Olimjon, Askad Mukhtar, Odil Yakubov, Pirimkul Kadirov, Erkin Vohidov, Abdulla Oripov, Omoan Matjon, Rauf Parfi. Among them, a special role is played by the creativity of Usmon Nosir.

Usmon Nosir became a victim of the repression-based policy of the Shura state, an inanimate creator who experienced his suffering, an early Khazan. He created poetry collections such as “Қуёш билан суҳбат”, “Сафарбар сатрлар”, “Тракторобод”, “Юрак”, “Меҳрим”, “Норбўта”, “Нахшон”, epics, “Атлас”, “Зафар”, “Сўнги кун”, “Душман” in the period from 18 to 24 years. A.S.Pushkin, M.Yu.Lermontov, N.A.Dobralyubov, V.I.Kirshan, J.Byron, G.Geyne, I.V.Goethe skillfully translated his works into Uzbek.

### MAIN PART

An important aspect characteristic of the style of Osman Nasir is the harmonious image of unique landscapes of nature with subtle experiences. For example, “Саман отга миниб...” the lyrical hero of his poem, in his heart, still enjoys the unique beauty of the ruling autumn in being with the charm of spring. The image shows “шўх шалоланинг хайё-ҳай деб кетган мўнглайган саси”, “йўлда қолиб кетган уфқларга узатилган кун дасти” invites us to a philosophical observation of the past of life, the eternity of life.

The poem

“Саман отга миниб  
Жилов тутди куз:  
Тиниқ сувлар кечиб  
Чопари келди.

Олтин япроқлардан

Пирпирак ўйнаб,

Пастда,

Тепаларда

Шивиллаб елди... [1, 80-81]

in its lines, the passage of time through the speed is interpreted as a means of revitalization, figurative expression. Abstract concepts come into concrete form.

Жим!.. Уфқдан ботар қуёшни

Шарт кесилаган бошга ўхшатдим.

Парча-парча куйган шафақлар

Тиркираган қонни эслатди! [1, 141]

the kill, which has and is making thousands of people in its verses, refers to the period. But this society ruins a person not only physically, but also spiritually:

Ки одамнинг ўзигинамас,

Ҳиссини ҳам хароб қилса давр!

Қийналаман!.. Юрагимда ҳовур...

Бу – қаршилик! Йўқ! Гина эмас.

Бу – қаршилик! Кўринг тарихни.

Парвонадек қаноти куйган,

Бу – қаршилик! Кўринг тарихни.

Умр тепасида мушт туйган...

Қийналаман виждон билан ман.

Мумкин эмас, қарши турмасдан! [1, 141]

The poet also prophesies about his fate, as long as he goes to the protection of the human right. Because, history is a witness-how many wrestlers have had their lives on this path.

Ўз зиммамга катта иш олдим:

Эҳтимолки, тамом қилмасдан –

Умрим тугар. Аммо бўлмайди

(Кўнглим ўрнига ҳеч тушмайди.)

Сенга қарши бош кўтармасдан,

Асрларни йиғлатган севги!..

Usmon Nosir uses analogies to achieve unique views of nature, the expression of subtle feelings. For example, “Шафақ ўчай деб қолди...” in the three-based bookings of his poem, he played an important role in the short, succinct expression of philosophical thought about transience and

eternity. The initial couple begins with a unique view of the horizon from the setting sun – an image of a being shrouded in crimson:

Шафақ учай деб қолди  
Каптар қонидек рангсиз...  
Кўзларимни узмайман [2, 76]

But one should not grieve in this case, not forget that the sun will come out again. As long as the past does not come back, you should look forward to rejoicing tomorrow.

Poem

Дединг: Энди ўчар у!  
Ўтган қайтиб келмайди,  
Эртани севиниб кут...

ends with an optimistic call in style. Or, the harmonious, pleasant state of the first autumn night in the likeness means “Сентябрь кечаси салқин. Онам каби юмшоқ, беозор” soft, unkempt as Mom”, certain moments of nature bring to mind the image dear to the lyrical hero. Naturally, at this age, childhood memories come to life.

Last couple

Шу дамда мен, гўё севинчдан  
Қанот ясаб, учардим баланд.  
Ўша баланд осмон тубидан  
Ёшлигимни табрик айлардим [2, 74]

end with expression.

The poet brings nationality to the surface by means of analogies. The first paragraph of the poem below reveals the national image by comparing the eyes of a beautiful girl to the sea, while in the case of the next paragraph there is also a national expression:

Асли кўк кўз экан – кўз деган,  
Худди денгиз... Ишқу хурматни  
Кема қилиб, юзсанг ўшандан,  
Англаб эдинг бутун неъматни!  
Кўрасанми, қандай чиройли  
Тикилганча боқиб турса у?  
Чидолмайман, пишган тут каби  
Оёғига тўкилмасдан дув [1, 151]

In this place is academician it is appropriate to cite the following words of N.Karimov: "usually in country, people are called saints, and they are rejected. If we follow this creed, it would be possible to include such uncountable victims of the long-standing black massacre as Munavvar

Kori, Chulpon, Fitrat, Abdulla Kadiri, Usmon Nosir among the Saints. They dreamed that Bolshevism would not bring goodness to their lands, but, on the contrary, would remain consistent colonizers of the 20th century and would become independent of this soil – the Uzbek land, which inherited from our great-gods to us. In this sense, they were the discerning eyes of the Uzbek people" [3, 3].

The incomparable love of Usmon Nosir for the native land is striking in his works. In these grassy lines in the poem “Юрак” we clearly see the image of a fiery poet who is ready to sacrifice his existence for the motherland:

Юрак, сенсан менинг созим,  
Тилимни найга жўр этдинг.  
Кўзимга ойни беркитдинг,  
Юрак, сенсан ишқибозим.  
Итоат эт!  
Агар сендан  
Ватан рози эмас бўлса,  
Ёрил, чақмоққа айлан сен,  
Ёрил! Майли, тамом ўлсам!.. [1, 93]

The poet will remember childhood with sweet enticing, sometimes with sadness. For example, “Болалигимга” poem’s

Капалакнинг гул эмганин кўрдим  
Эслаб кетдим сени, малагим...  
Сен бердингми, шунча ширин шеърни,  
Эй, барглари кўм-кўк палагим [1, 98]

in the expression of childhood immaculate beauty, the leaves are likened to the blue list. The birth of a sweet poem separately notes the connection with childhood.

And in the poem “Қора сатрлар” the lyrical “i” describes the bitter memories of childhood as such:

Отам ўлди, мен сарсон бўлдим,  
Шум етим, – деб сўқдилар мени.  
Ажаб кунга мубтало бўлдим,  
Кўчаларга қувдилар мени...  
Ўша кунлар дилимда ҳаёт.  
(Оғир ғамни унутиб бўлмас!)

Тур! – дедилар, – тур, етимча зот!



Иложим йўқ, тураман бир пас [1, 134-135].

As noted by the professor Q.Yuldosh, "such aspects as pride, stubbornness, at the same time unparalleled hard work, disobedience, incomparably strong memory, tireless reading-learning stigma, truthfulness determine the uniqueness of the poet's work. In Uzbek poetry before Usmon Nosir, it was a priority to express calm, and the most difficult everyday situations as calmly as possible. The young poet brought to the side of these traditions openness, intensity in European literature, a set of hooves, a lack of rein in the dolga of feelings" [4, 338].

## CONCLUSION

Usmon Nosir in his poem “Боғим” says that “Баргдек узилиб кетсам, Унутмас мени боғим, Ишимни хурмат қилур, Гуллардан ҳайкал курур. Минг йиллардан кейин ҳам Унутмас мени боғим!” he had predicted. Indeed, it is indisputable that the works of Usmon Nosir, whose 110-year-old birthday is widely celebrated this year, will remain the property of the hearts of many generations, and the source of learning for future creators.

## REFERENCES:

1. Усмон Носир. Танланган Асарлар. Икки Томлик. Биринчи Том. – Тошкент: Ғ.Ғулом Номидаги Бадиий Адабиёт Нашриёти, 1969.
2. Усмон Носир. Юрак. – Тошкент: Ғ.Ғулом Номидаги Адабиёт Ва Санъат Нашриёти, 1984.
3. Каримов Н. Усмон Носирнинг Сўнгги Кунлари. – Тошкент: Шарқ, 1994.
4. Қозоқбой Йўлдош. Ёниқ Сўз. – Тошкент: Янги Аср Авлоди, 2006.
5. Hamidov M. Artistic Features Of Shukrat’s Novel “Mashrab”. “Actual Problems and Solutions of Modern Philology”. Collection of Materials of the International Online Conference. 2020; 13601: 125-129.
6. Sabirdinov, A. (2019). Sketches to the Novel “Night And Day” By Chulpan. *Scientific Journal of the Fergana State University*, 1(6), 119-120.
7. Sabirdinov, A. G. (2021). Interpretation of Characters in Utkir Hoshimov’s Story “Yanga”. *International Journal of Multicultural and Multireligious Understanding*, 8(6), 196-200.
8. Sabirdinov, A. (2020, December). Askar Kasimov in the Uzbek Poetry Of The Xx Century The Role And Importance Of Creation. In *Конференции*.
9. Sabirdinov, A. G. (2021). Interpretation of the Banned Period in the Stories Of Naim Karimov. *Asian Journal of Multidimensional Research*, 10(11), 84-91.
10. Сабирдинов, А. Г. (1993). Слово И Образ В Поэзии Айбека.

## AWARENESS OF THE “POSH” ACT, 2013 AMONG STUDENTS: A STUDY OF HIGHER EDUCATIONAL INSTITUTIONS OF PUNJAB

**Aayushi Sharma\***

\*Research Scholar,  
Centre for Human Rights and Duties,  
Panjab University, Chandigarh, INDIA  
Email id: aayushiisharmaa30@gmail.com

**DOI: 10.5958/2278-4853.2022.00162.8**

---

### ABSTRACT

*The institutes of higher learning are those spaces where women learn and prepare themselves to enter into the working world. The students are needed to be informed about the provisions of Prevention of Sexual Harassment Act, 2013. Several enactments have been passed in India and at international level to bring about changes in the status of women and to eradicate crimes against women, but we have not yet achieved the desired result. The Sexual Harassment of Women at Workplace (Prevention, Prohibition and Redressal) Act 2013 was enacted to provide protection to women at workplace. This paper is a study of awareness about the Sexual Harassment of Women at Workplace (Prevention, Prohibition and Redressal) Act, 2013 among students of Higher Educational Institutions in Punjab.*

**KEYWORDS:** Educational, Institutions, Harassment, Prevention, enactments.

---

### INTRODUCTION

Sexual Harassment is a practice in which inappropriate promises are made by an employer/employee to its women employee/colleague in exchange of sexual favours. It forms one of the gross human rights violations. It challenges the right to equality and dignity. A country like India had witnessed atrocities against women since the ancient times. Women rights are being exploited and sexual harassment has taken a new form of exploitation.

This kind of harassment is illegal everywhere in the world. It constitutes as a crime. India is signatory to CEDAW since 30 July, 1980 and ratified it on 09 July, 1993. CEDAW states that states that harassment of women at workplace which is sexual in nature is a crime. In India in 1997 Supreme Court promulgated the Vishaka Guidelines which were then superseded by Sexual Harassment of Women at Workplace (Prevention, Prohibition and Redressal) Act, 2013.

Sexual harassment at workplace has become a global menace. The main reason for this is men believe that women will accept this behaviour of superiority over them. But it's not true; on the other hand, women have now become more vigilant towards their rights. The patriarchal beliefs and values have led to gross women rights violations across the world. This has led to the creation of unsafe working space for women. This hindrance hampers the growth and restricts the participation of women at work. In the present scenario, women are still afraid of the societal pressures i.e. they do not report such harassment cases. They have this fear in their minds of losing of employment, being stigmatized, losing of personal character, etc. Both public and private sector observes sexual harassment of women at workplace. It poses threat to women

which include serious health and economic issues which effects the life of women both personally as well as professionally.

Globally, sexual harassment at workplace has been increasingly understood as a violation of women's rights. As we all know, patriarchal society's social construct continues to condone violence against women in both the private and public spheres. Sexual harassment is a mirror that reflects male control over women. Because of the patriarchal structure of society, women are compelled to conform to established gender roles. Sexual harassment in the workplace is not a harmless crime.

This paper is a study of awareness about the Sexual Harassment of Women at Workplace (Prevention, Prohibition and

Redressal) Act, 2013 among students of Higher Educational Institutions in Punjab. The government has enacted the law, but it is equally critical that women for whom the law has been made are aware of it. India's history demonstrates that rules and regulations are not always followed correctly. There is also a lack of proper enactment of laws. One aspect that contributes to the improper enactment of laws is public negligence, or negligence on the part of society for whom the laws are enacted. The main goal of this research is to determine the level of knowledge among college students regarding sexual harassment at workplace. Another aspect of this research is to determine the level of awareness of this act among college and university students and to learn more about how this act is being implemented in Punjab's colleges and institutions. Colleges and institutions also tend to get away with proper implementation of rules designed specifically for female employees and students by the government. India is a country where women still face discrimination in a lot of areas, including right to work. Women are not offered the same opportunities as men. At the workplace, they still encounter misogyny and prejudice. Because public sector businesses are influenced by the government, women who work in the public sector encounter less prejudice than women who work in the private sector. As a result, checking on the application of this legislation in private sector organizations also becomes important. The Indian government is working hard to provide women the equal status that they deserve, but this will not be possible without the cooperation of society. Owners and stakeholders must ensure that women are protected from sexual harassment at workplace. This can only be ensured through forming Internal Complaints Committee within the organizations/universities as suggested by the act.

### **AWARENESS AMONG STUDENTS OF HIGHER EDUCATIONAL INSTITUTIONS ON LAW RELATING TO PREVENTION OF SEXUAL HARASSMENT AT WORKPLACE**

Awareness programs and modules are needed to ensure that all students at college and university level are aware of their rights, procedures and establish a unified clarity on the conduct required to be followed in their institutions. In order to ensure equal participation and equal opportunity for all at work, it is extremely important to eliminate the discriminatory behaviour in the institutions. This can only be done with effective and efficient compliance with the law against sexual harassment i.e., the Sexual Harassment of Women at Workplace (Prevention, Prohibition and Redressal) Act, 2013 and other related laws.

It has been observed that due to fear of sexual harassment most of the families send their young girls to an all-girls college. As a result, in such instances, girls are frequently forced to forego

their dream college goals. When sexual harassment occurs, the most important rights are violated which include Right to equality and non-discrimination (Article 14 & 15), Right to life & dignity (Article 21), Right to practice profession and carry on any occupation (Article 19), Right to safe environment from sexual harassment, etc. The need of the hour is to clarify the act's broad and inclusive definition of sexual harassment. It encompasses all forms of sexual harassment, including verbal, nonverbal, emotional, mental, and physical.

### **OBJECTIVES OF THE STUDY**

- To assess the awareness of POSH Act among students of Higher Educational Institutions.
- To study the implementation of Act in various universities of Punjab.
- To study if proper steps were taken against the harasser.

### **RESEARCH METHODOLOGY**

For the purpose of this study, a structured questionnaire was created to collect relevant information about the levels of awareness of the POSH Act and UGC regulations on the problem of sexual harassment. The universe of the study was the students of higher educational institutions namely Chitkara University, Panjab University, Punjabi University and Chandigarh University. The data was gathered through an online survey method. To gain a better understanding and analysis of the topic, both closed ended and open ended questions were asked. A total of 170 respondents reverted to the questionnaire and gave their responses. Statistical approaches were used to analyse the data collected.

### **FINDINGS OF THE STUDY**

The information was gathered using an online survey. The total number of respondents was 170, drawn at random basis from selected universities of Punjab. There were 126 female responses and 44 male respondents, which constituted to a total of 74.11 percent female respondents and 25.88 percent male respondents. The main objective of this study was to assess the awareness of the Sexual Harassment of Women at Workplace (Prohibition, Prevention and Redressal) Act, 2013 among higher educational institutional students.

The act's provisions were known by 86.47 percent of respondents, whereas the act's provisions were unknown by 13.52 percent of respondents. The majority of respondents, regardless of gender, were aware of the act, which is a notable finding of this study.

The respondents were asked about these regulations. Approximately 69.41 percent of respondents were aware of the regulations, while 30.58 percent were not. The majority of the responders appeared to be aware of these rules. Around 80.58 percent of respondents said their institutions obey these regulations, while 19.41 percent said they don't. It is commendable that many higher educational institutions adhere to these sexual harassment policies.

A total of 73.52 percent of respondents said their institutions have an Internal Complaints Committee or other committee for dealing with sexual harassment cases, while 26.47 percent said their institutions do not have an Internal Complaints Committee or other committee for dealing with sexual harassment complaints. The majority of respondents have not experienced sexual harassment at their workplaces, and only 12.35 percent have experienced sexual harassment at their workplaces. Many responders said they have faced this issue on their campuses.

The Sexual Harassment of Women at Workplace (Prevention, Prohibition and Redressal) Act, 2013 states event/events that are counted as harassment. These event/events include physical contact and advances; a demand or request for sexual favours; making sexually coloured remarks; showing pornography; or any unwelcome physical, verbal or non-verbal conduct of sexual nature. It was observed that majority of respondents faced harassment in the form of unwelcome physical, verbal or non-verbal conduct of sexual nature, followed by physical contact and advances. The respondents who faced sexual harassment were also asked that what step they took when they were sexually harassed? 10 respondents reported the incident to the Internal Complaints Committee, 7 told a friend or family member about it, 6 warned the harasser that what he was doing was wrong, and 4 remained silent for personal reasons. Some of the respondents also answered it in their own words.

The respondents were asked about the inquiry procedure of the complaint. 50 percent said that inquiry was conducted and other 50 percent said that inquiry was not conducted. When asked about the redressal procedure followed to handle the issue, the respondents, 52 respondents said a proper procedure was used to address their concern, while 20 said no such mechanism was used. The respondents at the end were asked an open-ended question about how they felt with regard to the decision taken by the committee? Respondents were asked to give their opinion on solving this problem of sexual harassment.

A majority of respondents talked about the change that is needed to be brought in the mindset of the males so that they start respecting women and do not treat them as a sex object. Another most important point that came up was to create awareness among students at school and college levels so that they do not indulge in such activities when they get employed at workplaces. Some respondents were of the view that this problem can also be solved by organizing workshops and seminars in educational institutions to raise awareness about sexual harassment among women. Women who are sexually harassed should be given a welcoming environment so that they will not hesitate to speak out against such behaviour. Emergency telephone numbers should be made available, and CCTV cameras should be installed to monitor the premises.

## **CONCLUSION**

The objective of this study was to assess the awareness among students of higher education institutions in the state of Punjab about the POSH Act, 2013. The data was collected through an online questionnaire in which respondents were asked a series of questions. They were mostly full-time students. The study reveals, 86.47 percent of people were aware of the Sexual Harassment (Prohibition, Prevention, and Redress) Act of 2013, whereas 13.53 percent were not. Only 12.35 percent of respondents said they have experienced sexual harassment at their respective institutions. The burden of preventing sexual harassment rests on the employer. Most successful preventive strategies and plans on sexual harassment require the involvement of all those concerned and a clear statement of intent.

**EVALUATION OF PHYTOCHEMICALS, ANTIBACTERIAL, ANTIOXIDANT ACTIVITY, TOTAL FLAVONOID, AND PHENOLIC CONTENT OF ZANTHOXYLUM ARMATUM FOUND IN PALPA DISTRICT OF NEPAL**

**Deepak Kumar Shrestha\***

\*Lecturer in Chemistry,  
Tribhuvan University,  
Butwal Multiple Campus,  
Butwal, NEPAL

Email id: shresthadeepak854@gmail.com

**DOI: 10.5958/2278-4853.2022.00163.X**

---

**ABSTRACT**

*Zanthoxylum armatumis* an important medicinal plant. This study was to analyze phytochemicals, antibacterial, antioxidant activity, TPC, and TFC quantitatively in wild fruit extract. The wild fruits of the plant were collected from the Palpa district. Fruits were shaded dried and ground and extracted with methanolic solvent by cold percolation method. The extract was then examined for qualitative and quantitative analysis. Preliminary phytochemical screening revealed the presence of flavonoids, Polyphenol, Alkaloids, steroids, Tannins, Terpenoids, Coumarins, Quinones, Glycosides, Saponins, etc. The antimicrobial activity was analyzed by the Agar Well Diffusion method, antioxidant activity was evaluated by DPPH radical scavenging assay, total phenolic content was determined by using Folin-Ciocalteu method, and flavonoid content was determined by using aluminium chloride colorimetric method. The DPPH radical scavenging activity in terms of  $IC_{50}$  value of the wild fruit sample was  $51.596\mu\text{g/ml}$ . The total phenolic content was found  $244.46\pm 0.03$  (mg of GAE/g), total TFC content was found  $131.66\pm 0.06$  (mg of QE/ g). Upon antibacterial test, the extract was more sensitive to gram-positive bacteria *S. aureus* (ZOI= 8 mm) but remains insensitive to *E. coli*.

**KEYWORDS:** *Z. Armatum*, Rutaceae Family, Phenolic, Flavonoid, Antibacterial Analysis.

---

**INTRODUCTION**

Nepal is a beautiful landlocked country in South Asia, with a total area of  $147,181\text{ km}^2$ . Its altitude ranges from 70m to 8848 m, and the highest point in the world. Nepal occupies only 0.03 percent of the global surface area, is enriched by several climatic conditions, and geographical variations, and an immense variety of medicinal plants have contributed to about 10% medicinal plants of the expected 7000 species of flowering plants (Muhammad et al., 2011). In this research, the wild fruit of *Zanthoxylum armatum* was collected from the Palpa district from 1 August to 20 August. It is a district in Lumbini Province Nepal, where the altitude ranges from 250m to 2000 m from sea levels. *Z. armatumis* an important medicinal plant commonly known as winged prickly ash in English and Timur in Nepali. It is a small xerophytic shrub, growing to 3.5 meters



in height, that belongs to the Rutaceae family. It grows throughout Nepal between 1000-2400m altitude. It is endemic from Pakistan across to South Asia up to Korea and Japan. The fruits and seeds of the plant are used as a spice; as folk medicine, essential oil production, and as an ornamental garden plant. This is a highly pungent, sharp-tasting dried berry with a "biting taste and anesthetic feeling on the tongue. Eight species of *Zanthoxylum* have been reported from Nepal till now: *Z. acanthopodium* DC., *Zanthoxylum armatum* DC., *Z. floribunda* Wall., *Z. nepalense* Babu, *Z. nitidum* (Roxb.) DC., *Z. oxyphyllum* Edgew., *Z. simularis* Hance and *Z. tomentellum* Hook. f. (Rajbhandari et al., 2015). Among these species *Zanthoxylum armatum* is the most common and one of the 30 medicinal plants of the country, which has been prioritized by the government of Nepal for economic development with a high emphasis on cultivation and agro-technology development (DPR, 2006). Thus different parts of the plants have been used in several indigenous medicinal practices as carminative, antipyretic, appetizer, stomachic, toothache, dyspepsia.

Different phytochemical constituents (alkaloids, flavonoids, lignins, coumarins, phenols, terpenoids) have been found in this plant. Its trade value is also very high with its manifold applications in Ayurveda, allopathy, general pharmacy, and other industries there is a huge demand for *Z. armatum* in the both domestic and international markets due to which the market price has been escalating in the last two decades (Hertog & Wiersum, 2000). Acetone fraction of methanolic extract, from the *Z. armatum* fruit, has strong antibacterial activity against the gram-positive bacteria *Staphylococcus aureus* and gram-negative bacteria *Escherichia coli*. (Tiwari et al. 2020). The antifungal activity of essential oil of methanol extract from *Z. armatum* leaves was tested against fungi, *A. brassicae*, *A. alternate*, and *C. lunata*. The methanol extract gave significant results for antifungal activity. It could be due to the presence of phenolic and flavonoid compounds (Tiwari et al. 2020). The oil of the plant also showed antifungal properties against 24 different fungi. It also exhibited repellent and larvicidal activity against three mosquito vectors, also recommended for treating ailments like rheumatism, bronchitis, indigestion, asthma, varicose veins, toothaches, and cardiovascular, respiratory, and gastrointestinal disorders. And cholera. Powdered fruit, mixed with *Mentha* spp and table salt is eaten with a boiled egg for a chest infection and other digestive problems (Islam et al., 2009).

Indigenously *Z. armatum* is mainly used in chronic problems that is skin disease, rheumatism, toothache, gum bleeding, etc. It has anticancer antibacterial, antiviral, antifungal, anti-inflammatory, antioxidants activity etc. It has various phytochemicals such as lignins, alkaloids, monoterpenoid, polyphenolic and flavonoid groups, etc. Where mainly the phenolic and flavonoids give antioxidant activity and anticancer activity. It is widely used in Ayurveda and allopathy. Oxidative stress inside the body produces chronic diseases such as diabetes, heart disease, and cancer (Rezaeizadeh et al., 2011). In oxidative stress, the balance between the formation of reactive oxygen species (ROS) and the amount of antioxidants in the body is destroyed which causes damage to cell components

such as proteins, lipids, and nucleic acid and eventually leads to cell death (Nazıroğlu et al., n.d.). ROS and reactive nitrogen species (RNS) are the main sources of free radicals which lead to serious disorders such as Alzheimer's disease, Parkinson's disease, and Strokes (Willcox et al., 2004). Overproduction of these two radicals contributes to the pathogenesis of inflammatory diseases (medicine & 1989, n.d.). Antioxidants are compounds that hinder oxidative processes and thereby delay or prevent oxidative stress (Shyur et al., 2005). Increasing the intake of antioxidants can prevent diseases and lower health problems. In the present context, widely used synthetic oxidants are butylated hydroxyanisole (BHA), butylated hydroxytoluene (BHT), and tertiary butylated hydroxyquinone (TBHQ), and gallic acid ester etc. These possess certain side effects and toxic effects. Natural products, mainly obtained from dietary sources provide a large number of antioxidants that decreases oxidative injury (Elmastaş et al., 2006). Plants contain many phytochemicals that are useful sources of natural antioxidants, such as phenolic diterpenes, flavonoids, tannins, and phenolic acids (Lee et al., n.d.). Polyphenols, especially flavonoids are strong antioxidant in plant extracts (Zoology & 2010, 2010). Flavonoids are highly effective scavengers of most oxidizing molecules, including singlet oxygen and various free radicals.

Flavonoids are highly effective scavengers of most oxidizing molecules, including singlet oxygen and various free radicals. By Kharel et al., among 9 different medicinal plants in the Kavre district of Nepal, the extract of *S. pinnata* showed the highest percentage of radical scavenging activity up to  $87.94 \pm 1.88$  with 50% inhibitory concentration ( $IC_{50}$ )  $17.51 \pm 1.27$   $\mu\text{g/mL}$  (KHAREL et al., 2020). The presence of phenolic compounds suggests that antioxidant activity may be due to ferulic acid content (Khare et al., 2012). According to Nooreen et al., 2017, from *Z. armatum* fruits four chemically distinct compounds were isolated namely Tambulin (6), Prudomestin (7), Ombuin (8), and 3, 4, 5, 3', 4', 5'-hexahydroxydiphenyl ether (9) have been isolated and quantified from the fruits, further studied the antiproliferative, antimicrobial and antioxidant efficacy. The Tambulin revealed significant antiproliferative activity ( $IC_{50}$   $37.96 \pm 0.36$  to  $48.7 \pm 0.21$   $\mu\text{g/mL}$ ) against breast, liver, colon, and skin cancer cells. Hexane and ethyl acetate fraction exhibited moderate antibacterial efficacy (MIC: 250–1000  $\mu\text{g/mL}$ ) against selected pathogenic microbes while Ombuin displayed a broad-spectrum antibacterial effect. The high TPC ( $5.27 \pm 0.06$  to  $46.12 \pm 0.40$   $\text{mgGAE/g}$ , high TFC ( $6.05 \pm 0.24$  to  $14.46 \pm 0.73$   $\text{mgQE/g}$  and ferric reducing power ( $42.35 \pm 0.85$  to  $62.52 \pm 0.66$   $\text{mg/g}$  of ferrous sulfate equivalents) and high percent free radical scavenging activity ( $59.56 \pm 0.38$  to  $64.85 \pm 1.78$ ) were estimated and gave more positive attribute to its traditional usage (Nooreen et al., 2017). The different plant parts like leaves, fruits, stems, bark, seeds, and roots show antioxidative, antitumor, anti-inflammatory, analgesic, antimicrobial and insecticidal/larvicidal activity (Brijwal et al., 2013).

(Phuyal et al., 2020b) Natural antioxidants present in several medicinal plants are responsible for inhibiting the harmful effects of oxidative stress. These plants contain polyphenols and flavonoids that act as free radical scavengers and reduce oxidative stress and may be an alternative remedy to cure various harmful human diseases. In a study of methanolic extracts of

fruits, seeds, and bark of *Zanthoxylum armatum* collected from wild and cultivated populations in Nepal, the highest TPC value was  $226.3 \pm 1.14$  mg GAE/g in wild fruits, and the lowest was  $137.72 \pm 4.21$  mg GAE/g in cultivated seeds. Similarly, the highest TFC value was  $135.17 \pm 2.02$  mg QE/g in cultivated fruits, and the lowest was  $76.58 \pm 4.18$  mg QE/g in cultivated seeds. The extracts showed variable antioxidant properties. The fruits exhibited excellent antioxidant properties with IC<sub>50</sub> values of 40.62 µg/mL and 45.62 µg/mL for cultivated and wild fruits, respectively. Similarly, the IC<sub>50</sub> values of the bark were 63.39 µg/mL and 67.82 µg/mL, respectively, for cultivated and wild samples. And the least antioxidant capacity was shown by the seeds extract with IC<sub>50</sub> values of 86.75 µg/mL and 94.49 µg/mL for wild and cultivated seeds, respectively. The IC<sub>50</sub> value of the standard ascorbic acid was 36.22 µg/mL.

Different extracts of *Z. armatum* contain a considerable amount of phenols and flavonoids, including antioxidant properties, suggesting the potential use of this species in pharmacy and phytotherapy as a source of natural antioxidants (Phuyal et al., 2020b, 2020a). Crude methanol extracts of fruits, seeds, and bark of *Zanthoxylum armatum* were investigated in vitro for antimicrobial activities against 9 different bacterial strains using the agar well diffusion method, and the MBC values were determined. Only 5 bacteria, i.e., *Bacillus subtilis*, *Enterococcus faecalis*, MRSA, *Staphylococcus aureus*, and *Staphylococcus epidermidis* exhibited antibacterial properties against the different extracts. The fruit and seed extracts showed activities against 5 bacteria. *Staphylococcus aureus* was found to be more susceptible for all the extracts compared to other strains. The maximum ZOI of 20.72 mm was produced by fruits (wild) and 18.10 mm (cultivated) against *Staphylococcus aureus*. And highest ZOI value of 50 mm for fruits and seeds extracts against *S. epidermidis*. The fruits, seeds, and bark extracts of *Z. armatum* exhibited remarkable antibacterial properties. It suggests the potential use of this plant for treating different bacterial diseases such as skin infection, urinary tract infection, dental problems, diarrhea, and dysentery (Phuyal et al., 2020a).

### **SPECIFIC OBJECTIVES**

The specific objectives of this research study are:

- To perform photochemical screening, of the methanolic extract of the wild fruits of the plant.
- To find the antioxidant activity, total phenolic, and total flavonoid content of methanolic extract of wild fruit of *Zanthoxylum armatum*.
- To perform antimicrobial activity test.

### **MATERIAL AND METHOD**

#### ***Equipment Used***

The types of equipment used in this research work were beakers, conical flasks, test tubes, reagent bottles, bio safety cabinet, vials, burettes, Digital balance (GT 210), Cuvettes (Quartz), Incubator and autoclave (S.N Scientific Instrument (p) Ltd Delhi), Graduated pipettes, Laminar air flow (Indosati scientific lab equipment), Mechanical grinder, pipettes, micropipettes,

thermometer, condensers, round bottom flasks, Rotary evaporator, water bath, UV-visible spectrophotometer (Aczel 2306, Product ID:201605028).

#### ***Chemicals:***

All chemicals used are of analytical grades. Methanol, Quercetin, Galic acid ( Loba Chemie Pvt Ltd.), 2,2-diphenyl-1-PycrylHydrazyl, Folin-Ciocalteu reagent, DMSO (Qualigenes), Mueller-Hinton Agar (Himedia),  $\text{NH}_4\text{SCN}$ ,  $\text{FeSO}_4$ ,  $\text{NH}_4\text{OH}$ , Distilled water,  $\text{NaNO}_2$ ,  $\text{AlCl}_3$ , Aluminium chloride, ascorbic acid (LOBA Chemie Pvt. Ltd), hydrochloric acid, Fehling's solution, alpha-Naphthol,  $\text{FeCl}_3$ ,  $\text{NaHCO}_3$ ,  $\text{Bi}(\text{NO}_3)_3$ , KI,  $\text{HgCl}_2$ , Picric acid, disodium hydrogen phosphate, sodium carbonate, sodium chloride, sodium hydroxide, sodium nitroprusside, etc. Different reagents viz: Meyer's reagent, Dragendorff's reagent, Molisch's reagent, etc were prepared in laboratory reagent grade

#### ***Collection and Identification of Plant Sample***

The fresh wild fruits of *Zanthoxylum armatum* were collected from August 1 to 20, 2021 from the Palpa district of Nepal. The collected fruits were identified by Prof. Dr. Ananta Gopal Singh Head of the Department of Botany Tribhuvan University, Butwal Multiple Campus, Butwal.

#### ***Drying and extract Preparation of Extract***

The collected fresh fruits were washed with tap water to remove the contaminants. Then the fruits were shade dried. The shade dried fruits were grounded into powder form in an electric grinder and the powdered sample were collected in clean plastic bag and were stored in cool and dry place, the powdered fruits extract was extracted by cold percolation method using methanol as a solvent. 84 g of powdered samples were weighed out by digital balance and kept in clean and dry conical flask. 250 ml methanols were added to flask sealed tightly and extraction was done repeatedly for 72 hrs with frequent shaking and filtered after complete maceration. The filtrate was concentrated with the help of a rotary evaporator. The solid methanolic extract of plants was obtained and stored at 4°C in a refrigerator until analyses.

#### ***Phytochemical analysis***

The method used for phytochemical screening was based on the protocol put forward by Ciulei I et, al. (2013). Phytochemical screening helps to identify secondary metabolites (bioactive compounds) present in plants. The analysis was done by the color reaction using different specific reagents. The qualitative results are expressed as (+) for the presence and (–) for the absence of phytochemicals.

- 1. Test for Alkaloids**-About 500 mg extract was dissolved in 3 mL of 2 % (v/v) HCl. The solution was equally divided into two test tubes. It gave positive Meyer's Test and Dragendorff's Test. Presence of alkaloids was confirmed.
- 2. Test for Terpenoids**-To about 200 mg extract, 2 mL of chloroform ( $\text{CHCl}_3$ ) and then 3 mL concentrated sulphuric acid ( $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ ) were added carefully. The formation of reddish-brown coloration at the interface indicated the presence of terpenoids.

3. **Test for Coumarins**-To about 1 mL of extract, 1 mL of 10 % sodium hydroxide (NaOH) solution was added. The formation of yellow color indicated the presence of coumarins.
4. **Test for Flavonoids/Shinoda's Test**-About 200 mg extract was dissolved in 2 mL methanol. To this solution, a small piece of magnesium and 4-5 drops of concentrated hydrochloric acid (HCl) were added. The formation of orange color indicates the presence of flavonoids.
5. **Test for Quinones**-To with about 2 mL extract, 1 mL freshly prepared ferrous sulfate ( $\text{FeSO}_4$ ) solution, and a few crystals of ammonium thiocyanate ( $\text{NH}_4\text{SCN}$ ) were added and the solution was treated with conc. sulphuric acid ( $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$ ) drop by drop. The appearance of persistent deep red coloration indicates the presence of quinones.
6. **Test for Polyphenols/  $\text{FeCl}_3$  Test**  
To about 1 mL extract, 1 mL distilled water was added followed by the addition of a few drops of 10 % (w/v) ferric chloride ( $\text{FeCl}_3$ ) solution. The appearance of greenish-blue coloration indicates the presence of polyphenols.
7. **Test for Glycosides**  
About 500 mg extract was dissolved in 2 mL methanol and divided into two parts and the following tests were performed.
  - i) The first part was treated with 5 mL of Molisch's reagent and conc.  $\text{H}_2\text{SO}_4$  was added drop by drop from the side of the test tube without disturbing the solution. The appearance of a violet ring at the junction of two liquids which on shaking turns the solution into a violet color indicates the presence of glycosides.
  - ii) To the second part 2 mL of 25 % (v/v)  $\text{NH}_4\text{OH}$  solution was added and shaken vigorously. The appearance of the cherry red color indicated the presence of glycosides.
9. **Test for Reducing Sugars**  
To about 1 mL extract, 1 mL distilled water was added followed by the addition of 1 mL Fehling's reagent (1, 1 mixture of Fehling's solution A and B). Then the mixture was warmed over a water bath for 30 minutes. The appearance of a brick-red precipitate indicated the presence of reducing sugars.
10. **Test for Saponins**-About 500 mg extract was treated with hot water followed by shaking for 30 seconds. The formation of thick froth indicates the presence of saponins. 10) Test for Tannins
11. **Test for Tannins**-About 200 mg extract was boiled adding 10 mL distilled water. The mixture was cooled and filtered and a few drops of  $\text{FeCl}_3$  solution were added to the filtrate. The appearance of a blue-green or black precipitate indicated the presence of tannin (Salkowski test).
12. **Carbohydrate (Molisch's Test)** About 2 mg of extracts were dissolved individually in 5 mL distilled water and filtered. Filtrates were treated with 2 drops of alcoholic  $\alpha$ -naphthol solution in a test tube. The formation of the violet ring at the junction indicated the

presence of carbohydrates

- 13. Test for Proteins (Xanthoproteic test):** In 2 ml of extract, 2 ml of conc.  $\text{HNO}_3$  was added formation of orange-yellow color indicated the presence of protein.

**TABLE 1: PHYTOCHEMICAL SCREENING OF METHANOLIC EXTRACT OF PLANT SAMPLES**

S.N	Test	Result
1.	Alkaloids	+++
2.	Terpenoids	+
3.	Coumarins	+++
4.	Flavonoids	++
5.	Quinones	+++
6.	Polyphenols	++
7.	Glycosides	+
8.	Reducing sugar	-
9.	Saponins	+++
10.	Tannins	++
11.	Carbohydrates	+
12.	Proteins	+
13.	Steroids	+

Where, +++: Significantly present, ++: Moderately present, +: Weakly present -: Absent

#### Determination of Antioxidant Activity

To determine antioxidant activity, 2, 2-Diphenyl-1-picrylhydrazyl (DPPH) radical scavenging assay was carried out according to the method of Jamuna et al. (2012). 2 ml of different concentrations (31.25  $\mu\text{g/ml}$  to 500  $\mu\text{g/ml}$ ) of extract solution of plant sample was mixed with 2 ml of DPPH solution (60  $\mu\text{M}$ ). The mixture was allowed to stand in dark conditions for 30 minutes for complete reaction. Finally, the absorbance of each plant sample was measured at 517 nm by using a UV spectrophotometer. The radical scavenging activity of each sample was calculated by using the following formula:

$$\text{Radical scavenging (\%)} = [(A_0 - A_1 / A_0) \times 100\%]$$

Where  $A_0$  is the absorbance of the control and  $A_1$  is the absorbance of the sample extract. Control is the test solution without a sample. Ascorbic acid was taken as standard. A similar procedure was followed with an ascorbic acid solution of concentration (31.25  $\mu\text{g/ml}$  to 500  $\mu\text{g/ml}$ ). The antioxidant activity of fruit sample was expressed in terms of  $\text{IC}_{50}$  (concentration required to inhibit DPPH radical formation by 50%). The 50% inhibitory concentration ( $\text{IC}_{50}$ ) value was indicated as an effective concentration of the sample that was required to scavenge 50% of the DPPH free radicals.  $\text{IC}_{50}$  values were calculated using the inhibition curve by plotting extract concentration versus the corresponding scavenging effect.



### **Determination of total Phenolic Content**

The total phenolic content of the extract was determined by using the Folin-Ciocalteu method using gallic acid as standard based on the oxidation-reduction reaction. The total phenolic content determination was performed with the help of the standard procedure given by Kim et al., n.d. with few modifications (Shackelford et al., 2009). 1 ml of crude extract of different concentrations (31.25, 61.5, 125, 250 and 500 µg/ml) was separately mixed with 5 ml 10% of Folin–Ciocalteu reagent. After standing for 5 min, 4 ml of 7% (w/v) sodium carbonate was mixed and shaken separately. The mixture was incubated for 40 min, and absorbance was measured at 760 nm. All experiment was carried out in triplicate for different concentration of samples.. The calibration curve was prepared using gallic acid as the standard of different concentrations (31.25, 61.5, 125, 250 and 500 µg/ml) in methanol. The total phenolic content was calculated from the calibration curve and the results were expressed as mg of gallic acid equivalent (GAE) per grm dry weight of extract.

Weight of extract using the formula,  $TPC = C \times V / M$  where C=conc of Galic acid obtained from the calibration curve in mg/ml, V= (R<sup>2</sup>) value and regression equation Volume of extract in ml, M=weight of plant extract in mg. the linear correlation coefficient were obtained from the gallic acid calibration curve. The regression equation was used to calculate the concentration of each extract. Thus with the calculated value of the concentration of each extract, the TPC was calculated.

### **Determination of total Flavonoid Content**

Aluminium chloride colorimetric method was used for the determination of flavonoid content with slight modification. 1 ml of extract of each different concentrations (31.25, 61.5, 125, 250, and 500 µg/ml) was mixed with 4 ml of distilled water, and readily added 0.3 ml of 5% sodium nitrite separately. After 5 minutes, added 0.3 ml 10% aluminium chloride and allowed to stand for 6 minutes. Then, added 2 ml of 1 M sodium hydroxide and finally added 2.4 ml of distilled water so that vol. was made to 10 ml, it was shaken well and absorbance was measured at 510 nm using the UV spectrophotometer. The calibration curve was prepared using quercetin as the standard of different concentrations (31.25, 61.5, 125, 250, and 500 µg/ml). Total flavonoid content was calculated from the calibration curve and results were expressed as mg of quercetin equivalent (QE) per gram dry extract weight of the extract.

### **Statistical Analysis**

All the experiments were performed in triplicate. Results were expressed as mean ± Standard deviation (SD). The IC<sub>50</sub> values and all the statistical analysis were carried out through Microsoft Excel 2016.

The linear correlation coefficient (R<sup>2</sup>) value was calculated from the data recorded as a mean of triplicate absorbance for different concentration of Gallic acid and Quercetin. The regression equation is given as  $Y = mx + c$  ..... (4)

Where,  $Y$  = Absorbance of extract,  $m$  = Slope from the std. calibration curve,  $x$  = Concentration of extract,  $c$  = Intercept

The TPC and TFC value of extract in different concentration was calculated using this regression equation.

### **Antimicrobial Activity Test**

Agar well diffusion method was used in the study of screening and the evaluation of the antibacterial activity of the crude plant extracts the diameter of zone of inhibition (ZOI) produced by the plant extracts on particular bacteria was measured for the estimation of their antimicrobial activity. In biological screening, the effect of the crude plant extract at a fixed dose level in species of the organism was studied. In this work, the antibacterial assay was performed. Inhibition of the bacteria was tested by agar well diffusion method and measured in the form of the zone of inhibition (ZOI). The antimicrobial assay was performed at, Crimson College of Technology (CCT), BMLT Department Butwal Rupandehi.

### **Collection of antibiotics and Test organisms**

Commercially available Gentamycin (as gram-positive bacteria) was used as positive control and Ciprofloxacin (as a gram-negative standard) was used. Gram-positive bacteria were: *Staphylococcus aureus* and Gram-negative bacteria was: *Escherichia coli*. DMSO was used as a negative control. All the strains were obtained from Crimson College of technology, BMLT Department, Rupandehi, Nepal.

### **Preparation of Plant Extract (Working Solution)**

100 mg/mL of working solution was made by transferring 0.01 g of the crude extract to a sterile vial aseptically containing 1 ml of DMSO solvent and dissolved thoroughly in DMSO to prepare stock solution so each 10ul of the sample contained 1 mg of plant extract. After making up a stock solution, the test tubes were capped, sealed, and stored in the refrigerator (2-8 °C) until use.

### **Collection of Antibiotics and Test organisms**

Commercially available Gentamycin (as a gram-positive bacteria) was used as positive control and Ciprofloxacin (as a gram-negative standard) was used. Gram-positive bacteria were: *Staphylococcus aureus* and Gram-negative bacteria were: *Escherichia coli*. DMSO was used as a negative control. All the strains were obtained from Crimson College of technology, BMLT Department, Rupandehi, Nepal.

### **Preparation of Plant Extract (Working Solution)**

100 mg/mL of working solution was made by transferring 0.01 g of the crude extract to a sterile vial aseptically containing 1 ml of DMSO solvent and dissolved thoroughly in DMSO to prepare stock solution so each 10ul of sample contained 1 mg of plant extract. After making up a stock solution, the test tubes were capped, sealed and stored in the refrigerator (2-8 °C) until use.

**Preparation of Culture Medium-**The media used in the study were prepared according to the manufacturer's recommendation. The detailed procedure is given below:

#### **Mueller Hinton Agar (MHA) Media Preparation**

38 g of MHA was placed in 1000 ml of the conical flask and 1000 ml distilled water was added. In the conical flask, the media dissolved completely and closed with a cotton plug and aluminium foil. Then the conical flask was sterilized in an autoclave at 121 °C for 15 minutes at 15 lbs pressure for sterilization. The hot conical flask media was allowed to cool to 40- 50 °C in sterilized laminar airflow. This media was poured into each petri plate and dropped to set.

#### **Preparation of nutrient Agar Media**

It was prepared by adding distilled water to 13 g of nutrient agar in a conical flask and made final vol. 1000 ml (13g/L) and boiled with continuously shaking. Then it was sterilized by autoclaving at 15 lbs pressure (121 °C) for 15 minutes. The sterilized media was allowed to cool about 50 °C. They were distributed in the sterilized petri-plates of 90 mm diameter in the ratio of 25 ml per plate aseptically and labeled properly. Plates were then left as such for solidification.

#### **Inoculation of Bacteria into the Media, Screening and Evaluation of Antimicrobial Activity:**

Already prepared Sterile Mueller-Hinton Agar (MHA) plates were dried to remove the excess moisture from the surface of the media. The sterile cotton swab was dipped into the standard inoculums and the excess of the inoculums was removed by pressing and rotating against the upper inside wall of the tube above the liquid level and then swabbed carefully all over the plates. This process was repeated two more times to maintain the uniform distribution of microorganism. The plate was rotated at an angle of 60° after each swabbing. Finally, the swab was passed around the edges of the agar surface. The inoculated plates were left to dry for a day in laminar air flow. The wells were made in the incubated media plates with the help of sterile cork borer of the diameter of 6mm and labeled properly. Then, 20 µl of the working solution of the plant extracts was loaded into the respective wells with the help of micropipette. DMSO was used as negative control and Gentamycin was used as a positive control in the separate well for the antibacterial activity. The plates were then left for half an hour with the lid closed so that extracts diffuse into the media. The plates were incubated overnight at 37 °C. The plates were then observed for the zone of inhibition (ZOI) produced by the antibacterial activity of plant extracts and the inhibition zones were measured by the use of a scale.

#### **Measurement of ZOI**

The zone of inhibition was determined. After 24 hours of incubation, the culture media was taken out from the incubator, the inhibited area (ZOI) by extract and antibiotics were measured in mm, with the help by ruler.

## RESULT AND DISCUSSION

### Extraction Yield Value;

The percentage yield of methanolic extract of wild fruit of *zanthoxylum aramatum* was found to be 12.65 % (w/w).

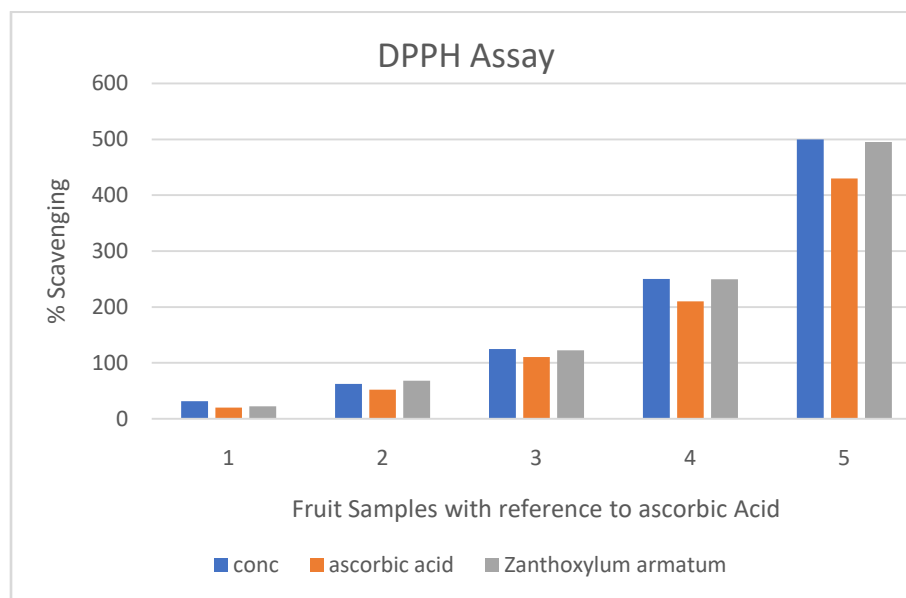
### Phytochemical Screening

Phytochemical screening revealed the presence of flavonoids, Polyphenol, Alkaloids, steroids, Tannins, Terpenoids, Coumarins, Quinones, Glycosides, Saponins, Proteins, Phenolic compounds, etc. These compounds are responsible for several pharmacological activities.

### Determination of Antioxidant Activity

#### Variation of DPPH Radical Scavenging Activity

The percentage of DPPH radical scavenging activity of samples at different concentrations in methanol is shown in figure 1. The DPPH radical scavenging activity in terms of  $IC_{50}$  value of wild fruit sample was  $51.596\mu\text{g/ml}$ . DPPH radical scavenging activity regarding ascorbic acid standard  $IC_{50}$  value was  $61.474\mu\text{g/ml}$ . This assay is a simple and widely used and most acceptable technique to evaluate the antioxidant potency of plant extracts. The antioxidants are the chemical compounds of the plant which are capable of enacting the visually noticeable quenching of the stable purple-colored DPPH radical to the yellow-



**Fig. 1: Percentage Scavenging of DPPH free radicals by methanolic extract of fruit with reference to ascorbic acid, results expressed as the mean  $\pm$  standard deviation (n=3) at a concentration of 31.25 to 500ppm.**

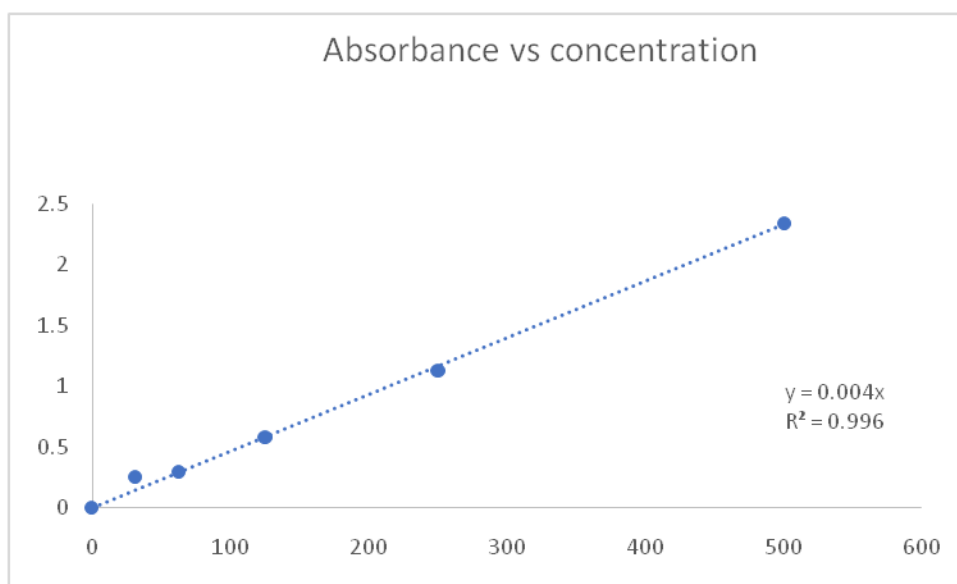
### Determination of Total Phenolic Content (TPC)

The total phenolic content of methanolic extracts was estimated by Folin- Ciocalteu's method using gallic acid as standard. Gallic acid solution of concentration (31.25-500 µg/ml) confirmed Beer's Law at 760 nm with a regression coefficient ( $R^2$ ) = 0.9983 (Figure 2). The highest total phenolic content was found in wild fruit extract  $244.46 \pm 0.03$  mg GAE/g dry extract weight.

### Calibration curve for standard Gallic Acid

**TABLE 2: ABSORBANCE OF GALLIC ACID AT DIFFERENT CONCENTRATION**

Concentration of Gallic acid (PPM)	Absorbance(mean)
500	2.343
250	1.131
125	0.579
62.5	0.294
31.25	0.253



**Figure2: Calibration curve for standard Gallic acid**

**TABLE 3: TOTAL PHENOLIC CONTENT (TPC) OF EXTRACT**

Concentration of extract (ppm)	Absorbance(mean)	Total Phenolic Content (TPC) mgGAE/gm
500	$1.149 \pm 0.02$	$244.46 \pm 0.03$
250	$1.124 \pm 0.01$	$239.14 \pm 1.43$
125	$0.738 \pm 0.04$	$157.021 \pm 4.33$

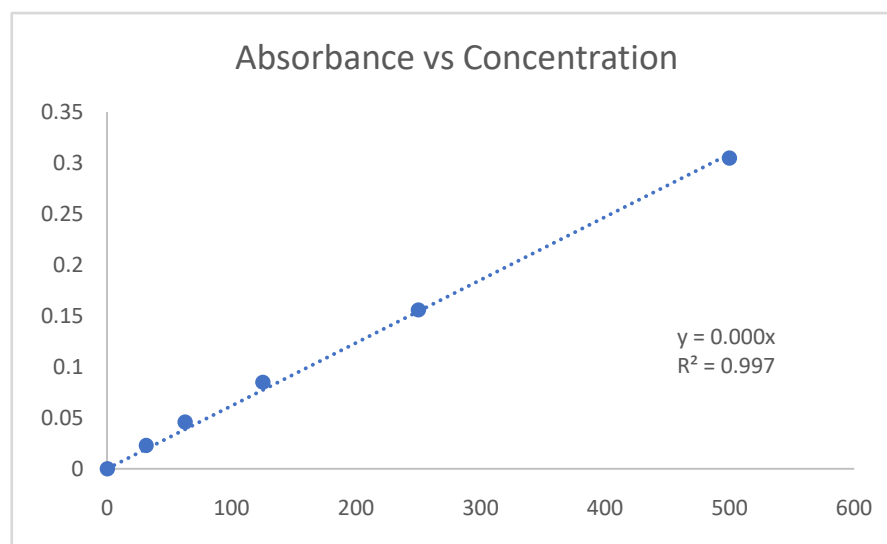
62.5	0.411±0.023	87.44±7.35
31.25	0.395±0.012	84.042±5.34

#### 4.5 Determination of Total Flavonoid Content (TFC)

The total flavonoid content for methanolic extracts was measured with the aluminium chloride colorimetric assay using quercet in as standard. The quercet in solution of concentration (31.25-500 µg/ml) confirmed to Beer's Law at 510 nm with a regression co- efficient ( $R^2$ ) = 0.9989 (Figure 2). Total flavonoid content was found 131.66±0.06 mg QE/g

**TABLE 4: ABSORBANCE OF QUERCET IN AT DIFFERENT CONCENTRATION**

Concentration of Standard Quercetin (ppm)	Absorbance (mean)
500	0.305
250	0.156
125	0.085
62.5	0.046
31.25	0.023



**Figure 3: Calibration curve for standard Quercet in**

**TABLE 5: TOTAL FLAVONOID CONTENT (TFC) OF EXTRACT**

Concentration of extract (PPM)	Absorbance(mean)	Total Flavonoid Content (TFC) mgQE/gm
500	0.079±0.001	131.66±0.06
250	0.074±0.012	123.33±0.44
125	0.071±0.003	118.33±0.54
62.5	0.050±0.02	83.33±1.03



31.25	0.043±0.01	71.66±3.12
-------	------------	------------

### Result of Antibacterial Test

The methanolic extract of fruit was screened for its antibacterial activity against two bacterial strains. Its antibacterial potency was confirmed by the absence or presence of an inhibition zone all over the disc loaded with the extract, Gentamicin in Ciprofloxacin, and DMSO as reference.

The result showed that extract was more sensitive to gram- positive bacteria as compared to gram- negative bacteria. The methanolic fruit extract was reported to be most significant against *S. aureus* (ZOI= 8 mm). However, the extract remains insensitive against *E. coli*.



Figure 4: Antibacterial activity of methanolic fruit extract of *Z. aramatum*

TABLE 6: ANTIBACTERIAL ACTIVITY OF METHANOLIC FRUIT EXTRACT OF *Z. ARAMATUM*

Sample	Zone of Inhibition(mm)	
	<i>E. coli</i>	<i>S. auerus</i>
Methanolic Extract of fruit	-	8 mm
Gentamicin(+ve control)	15 mm	25 mm
Ciprofloxacin	10 mm	15 mm
DMSO(-ve control)	-	-

Note: (-) Indicate inactive in the evaluated concentration.

The calculation for Total Phenolic Content (TPC) in different concentration of plant extract.

**TABLE 7: TOTAL PHENOLIC CONTENT FOUND IN DIFFERENT CONCENTRATION OF THE EXTRACT**

Conc <sup>n</sup> of Extract (ppm)	Weight of dry extract mg/ml	Absorbance(y)	GAEconc $\mu$ g/ml (mean x)	GAE conc <sup>n</sup> mg/ml (mean C)	TPC(mean) = $\frac{cxv}{M}$ (mg of GAE/gm)
500	0.0005	1.149 $\pm$ 0.02	244.46	0.24446	244.46 $\pm$ 0.03
250	0.000250	1.124 $\pm$ 0.01	239.14	0.23914	239.14 $\pm$ 1.43
125	0.000125	0.738 $\pm$ 0.04	157.021	0.15702	157.02 $\pm$ 4.33
62.5	0.000062	0.411 $\pm$ 0.023	87.44	0.08744	87.44 $\pm$ 7.35
31.25	0.000031	0.395 $\pm$ 0.012	84.042	0.084042	84.042 $\pm$ 5.34

The calculation for Total Flavonoids Content (TFC) in different concentration of extract

**TABLE 8: TOTAL FLAVONOID CONTENT FOUND IN DIFFERENT CONCENTRATION OF THE EXTRACT**

Conc <sup>n</sup> of Extract (ppm)	Weight of dry extract mg/ml	Absorbance (mean) (y)	QEconc <sup>n</sup> $\mu$ g/ml (mean x)	QEmg/ml (meanC)	TFC(mean) = (mg of QE/gm)
500	0.0005	0.079 $\pm$ 0.001	131.66	0.13166	131.66 $\pm$ 0.06
250	0.000250	0.074 $\pm$ 0.012	123.33	0.1233	123.33 $\pm$ 0.44
125	0.000125	0.071 $\pm$ 0.003	118.33	0.1183	118.33 $\pm$ 0.54
62.5	0.0000625	0.050 $\pm$ 0.02	83.33	0.08333	83.33 $\pm$ 1.34
31.25	0.00003125	0.043 $\pm$ 0.01	71.66	0.07166	71.66 $\pm$ 3.12

## CONCLUSIONS

The study shows the methanolic extract of wild fruit *Z. armatum* possesses potent anti-oxidant and antibacterial activity. The methanolic fruit extract was significant against *S. aureus*. The DPPH radical scavenging activities and subsequently the IC<sub>50</sub> values of methanolic extracts of the plants showed a high degree of antioxidant property. The greater antioxidant property might be due to the presence of bio-active constituents such as polyphenol, flavonoids, etc. The TPC and TFC were also found in the highest amount in wild fruit extract. Hence, this plant could be a potent source of natural drugs. Further extensive phytochemical and pharmacological investigation must be done.

## ACKNOWLEDGEMENT

The author is very grateful to the Campus Chief of BMC T.U., Department of Chemistry BMC, HOD of Botany Department, Dr. Anant Gopal Singh, BMLT Department of CCT College

Butwal, and RMC of Butwal Multiple Campus for providing support to conduct research successfully.

## REFERENCES

1. Bharti, S.& Bhushan, B., (2015). Phytochemical and pharmacological activities of *Zanthoxylum armatum* DC: An overview. *Res J Pharm Biol Chem Sci* 6
2. Brijwal, L., Pandey, A., & Tamta, S. (2013). An overview on phytomedicinal approaches of *Zanthoxylum armatum* DC.: An important magical medicinal plant. *Journal of Medicinal Plants Research*, 7(8), 366–370. <https://doi.org/10.5897/JMPR12.743>
3. Ciulei I., *Phytochem.*, 2013, 63 (1), 97–104.
4. Elmastaş, M., Gülçin, I., Işildak, Ö., Küfrevioğlu, Ö. I., Ibaoglu, K., & Aboul-Enein, H. Y. (2006). Radical scavenging activity and antioxidant capacity of bay leaf extracts. *Journal of the Iranian Chemical Society*, 3(3), 258–266. <https://doi.org/10.1007/BF03247217>
5. G.C., D. B., & Bahadur, D. (2019). Study on Biological Activities and Essential oil of *Cinnamomum Tamala*. <http://107.170.122.150:8080/xmlui/handle/123456789/1798>
6. Guleria, S., Tikku, AK., Koul, A., Gupta, S., Singh, G. & Razdan VK.(2013) Antioxidant and antimicrobial properties of the essential oil and extracts of *Zanthoxylum alatum* grown in North Western Himalaya, 1-9, Article ID 790580.
7. Ibrar,B., Muhammad, M. & Tahir, L., (2012), “Antimicrobial evaluation, determination of total phenolic and flavonoid contents in *Zanthoxylum armatum* DC,” *J Med Plant Res*6(11), 2105-2110.
8. Jamuna, S., Paulsamy, S., Sci, K. K.-J. A. P., & 2012, undefined. (n.d.). Screening of in vitro antioxidant activity of methanolic leaf and root extracts of *Hypochaeris radicata* L.(Asteraceae). *Japsonline.Com*, 2012(07), 149–154.
9. Kaur, A., Kaur, D., & Arora, S. (2015). Evaluation of antioxidant and antimutagenic potential of *Justicia adhatoda* leaves extract. *African Journal of Biotechnology*, 14(21), 1807–1819. <https://doi.org/10.4314/ajb.v14i21>
10. Khare, V., Kushwaha, P., Verma, S., Gupta, A., Srivastava, S., Kumar, A., & Rawat, S. (2012). Pharmacognostic Evaluation and Antioxidant Activity of *Urtica dioica* L. *Chinese Medicine*, 2012(03), 128–135. <https://doi.org/10.4236/CM.2012.33021>
11. KHAREL, R., EVALUATION, K. S.-, & 2020, undefined. (2020). Evaluation of antioxidant potential and quantitative estimation of phenolic and flavonoid content in some selected Nepalese medicinal plants. *Researchgate.Net*, 13, 2020. <https://doi.org/10.22159/ajpcr.2020.v13i1.36182>
12. Kharshiing, EV. (2012), “ Aqueous extracts of dried fruits of *Zanthoxylum armatum* DC, (Rutaceae) induce cellular and nuclear damage coupled with inhibition of mitotic activity in- vivo”, *Am J Plant*; 3,1646-1653.
13. Kim, M., Lee, H., Kim, E., Won, N., ... Y. C.-F. and C., & 2007, undefined. (n.d.). Protective effect of aqueous extract of *Perilla frutescens* on tert-butyl hydroperoxide-induced oxidative hepatotoxicity in rats. *Elsevier*. Retrieved May 22, 2022, from <https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0278691507001093>

14. Lee, J., Hwang, W., ethnopharmacology, S. L.-J. of, & 2004, undefined. (n.d.). Antioxidant and anticancer activities of organic extracts from *Platycodon grandiflorum* A. De Candolle roots. Elsevier. Retrieved May 24, 2022, from <https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0378874104002156>
15. Manandhar, N. (2002). Plants and people of Nepal. <https://www.cabdirect.org/cabdirect/abstract/20023098128>
16. Medicine, B. H.-F. radicals in biology and, & 1989, undefined. (n.d.). Protection against oxidants in biological systems. The superoxide theory of oxygen toxicity. Ci.Nii.Ac.Jp. Retrieved May 24, 2022, from <https://ci.nii.ac.jp/naid/10018567740>.
17. Muhammad, A., Rahman, M. S., Hamidul Kabir, A., Kabir, S., & Khalid Hossain, M. (2011). Antibacterial and cytotoxic activities of *Spondias pinnata* (Linn. f.) Kurz fruit extract. Indian Journal of Natural Products and Resources, 2(2), 265–267. <http://nopr.niscair.res.in/handle/123456789/12153>
18. Nazıroğlu, M., Karaoğlu, A., Toxicology, A. A.-, & 2004, undefined. (n.d.). Selenium and high dose vitamin E administration protects cisplatin-induced oxidative damage to renal, liver and lens tissues in rats. Elsevier. Retrieved May 24, 2022, from <https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/pii/S0300483X03004980>
19. Nooreen, Z., Singh, S., Singh, D. K., Tandon, S., Ahmad, A., & Luqman, S. (2017). Characterization and evaluation of bioactive polyphenolic constituents from *Zanthoxylum armatum* DC., a traditionally used plant. Biomedicine & Pharmacotherapy, 89, 366–375. <https://doi.org/10.1016/J.BIOPHA.2017.02.040>
20. Phuyal, N., Jha, P. K., Raturi, P. P., & Rajbhandary, S. (2020a). In Vitro Antibacterial Activities of Methanolic Extracts of Fruits, Seeds, and Bark of *Zanthoxylum armatum* DC. <https://doi.org/10.1155/2020/2803063>
21. Phuyal, N., Jha, P. K., Raturi, P. P., & Rajbhandary, S. (2020b). Total Phenolic, Flavonoid Contents, and Antioxidant Activities of Fruit, Seed, and Bark Extracts of *Zanthoxylum armatum* DC. <https://doi.org/10.1155/2020/8780704>
22. Rezaeizadeh, A., Zuki, A., Abdollahi, M., ... Y. G.-A. J. of, & 2011, undefined. (2011). Determination of antioxidant activity in methanolic and chloroformic extracts of *Momordica charantia*. Ajol.Info, 10(24), 4932–4940. <https://doi.org/10.5897/AJB10.1972>.
23. Sati, SC., & Sati, MD., et al. (2011), Anti-Inflammatory and antioxidant activities *Zanthoxylum armatum* stem bark. 11(5), 19–21.
24. Shackelford, L., ... S. M.-I. J. of, & 2009, undefined. (2009). Determination of total phenolics, flavonoids and antioxidant and chemopreventive potential of basil (*Ocimum basilicum* L. and *Ocimum tenuiflorum* L.). Researchgate.Net. <https://doi.org/10.3923/ijcr.2009.130.143>
25. Shyur, L., Tsung, J., Chen, J., ... C. C.-I. journal of, & 2005, undefined. (2005). Antioxidant properties of extracts from medicinal plants popularly used in Taiwan. Gigvvy.Com, 3, 3. <https://gigvvy.com/journals/ijase/articles/ijase-200512-3-3-195>
26. Singh, TP. & Singh, OM., (2011), "Phytochemical and Pharmacological profile of *Zanthoxylum armatum* DC. An overview. Indian J Nat Prod Res, 2(3), 275–285.

27. Singh, T., et al (2015), Anticancer properties and enhancement of therapeutic potential of cisplatin by leaf extract of *Zanthoxylum armatum* DC. *Biol Res*48(1),46-49.0
28. Srivastava, N., Kainthola, A., Bhatt, AB., (2013), In-vitro antimicrobial activity of bark extract of an ethnic plant *Zanthoxylum alatum* DC against selected human pathogens in Uttarakhand Himalaya. *Int J Herb Med*.1(3), 21–24.
29. Willcox, J. K., Ash, S. L., & Catignani, G. L. (2004). Antioxidants and prevention of chronic disease. *Critical Reviews in Food Science and Nutrition*, 44(4), 275–295. <https://doi.org/10.1080/10408690490468489>
30. Ramchandran, R., Ali, M., (1996) Chemical composition of fruit oil of *Zanthoxylum armatum*. *Hamdard Med*, 4 ,42-51.
31. Sati, SC., & Sati, MD., et al. (2011), Anti-Inflammatory and antioxidant activities *Zanthoxylum armatum* stem bark. 11(5), 19–21.
32. Scalbert, A., Manach, C., & Morand, C., (2005),“Dietary polyphenol and the prevention of diseases,” *Critical Reviews in Food Science and Nutrition*, 45(4), 287–306, 2005.
33. Zoolfa, N., Singh, S., Kumar, D., & Tandon, SS., (2017), Characterization and evaluation of bioactive polyphenolic constituents form *Zanthoxylum armatum*.A traditionally used plant. *Biomedicine and pharmacotherapy*, 89,366
34. Zoology, M. B.-C. J. of, & 2010, undefined. (2010). *Plant natural products: a primer*. *Cdnsciencepub.Com*, 88(7), 601–614. <https://doi.org/10.1139/Z10-035>



## Editorial Board

**Dr. SS Narta**

Professor  
Department of Commerce,  
Himachal Pradesh University,  
Summerhill, Shimla – 171005,  
H.P., India.

**Dr. Mamta Mokta**

Professor  
Department of Public Administration,  
Himachal Pradesh University,  
Shimla, India.

**Prof. Shyam Lal Kaushal**

School of Management Studies  
Himachal Pradesh University,  
Shimla, India.

**Dr. Durgesh Nandini**

Associate Professor  
Department of Public Administration,  
IGNOU, Delhi, India.

**Dr B. Mohan**

Associate Professor in English  
S.V. College of Engineering and Technology  
Chittoor, Andhra Pradesh, India.

**Dr. Dalbir Singh**

Assistant Professor  
Haryana School of Business,  
G.J.U.S & T, Hisar,  
Haryana, India.

**Dr. Sonia Sharma Uppal**

P.G. Department of Commerce and Management  
Arya College, Ludhiana,  
India.

**Nadeera Jayathunga**

Senior Lecturer  
Department of Social Sciences  
Sabaragamuwa University, Belihuloya  
Sri Lanka

**Mrs. Sabina Dinesh Kumar**

Assistant Lecturer  
Faculty of Management Studies & Comm.  
University of Jaffna,  
Sri Lanka

**Jumana M. Elhafiz**

Assistant Professor  
Department of Biochemistry,  
Shendi University, Ministry of Health,  
Sudan

**Dr. Sunil Kumar**

Assistant Professor,  
Punjab School of Economics,  
Guru Nanak Dev University,  
Amritsar, Punjab, India

**Dr. Ebele P. ifionu**

Faculty, Department of Finance and Banking  
University of Port Harcourt, Nigeria

## Review Process

Each research paper/article submitted to the journal is subject to the following reviewing process:

1. Each research paper/article will be initially evaluated by the editor to check the quality of the research article for the journal. The editor may make use of iThenticate/Viper software to examine the originality of research articles received.
2. The articles passed through screening at this level will be forwarded to two referees for blind peer review.
3. At this stage, two referees will carefully review the research article, each of whom will make a recommendation to publish the article in its present form/modify/reject.
4. The review process may take one/two months.
5. In case of acceptance of the article, journal reserves the right of making amendments in the final draft of the research paper to suit the journal's standard and requirement.



## Categories

- Business Management
- Social Science and Humanities
- Education
- Information Technology
- Scientific Fields



## Published by

### Trans Asian Research Journals

SCO 34, 1st Floor, HUDA Market,  
Near Red Cross, Jagadhri - 135 003 (Haryana) INDIA  
Website : [www.tarj.in](http://www.tarj.in)

Our other publications :

Trans Asian Journal of Marketing & Management Research (TAJMMR)  
ISSN (online) : 2279-0667